

The Saxon Poet's
Vita Carolī
Liber 1

A Latin Reader in Two Levels

Compiled by Aaron Decker

*Hic liber est dēdicātus discipulīs meīs
in classe Latīnae III
in annō scholasticō 2025-2026.*

*Grātiae discipulīs dantur quī versiōnem
simplicissimam probāvērunt:*

*M. A.
S. M. C.
J. C. E.
L. H.
E. J.
T. K. K.
D. J. L.
E. R. S.
D. Y.
A. Z.*

Imāgō in tegmine est dē Matthäus Merian, 1630. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Charlemagne_destroys_Krodo.jpg

Copyright ©2025 Aaron Decker
All Rights Reserved
ISBN: 9798275568059
Imprint: Independently published
decker49@gmail.com

Table of Contents

Intrōductiō.....	4
Versiō Simplicissima.....	6
Versiō Originālis.....	24
Bibliography & Maps.....	102

Intrōductiō

This is a Latin reader edition of the Saxon Poet's *Vīta Carolī*, Liber 1. The *Vīta Carolī* is written in poetic verse and recounts the deeds of Charlemagne. The *Vīta Carolī* consists of five books: the first four in dactylic hexameter detailing the life of Charlemagne, the fifth book in elegiac couplets giving an obituary for Charlemagne.

Nothing is known about the Saxon Poet beyond his *Vīta Carolī*, and that he composed it between 888-891 AD under King Arnulf of Carinthia.

Students new to scansion and reading Latin poetry will find the *Vīta Carolī* to be an interesting read with simple scansion. In the rare cases where elision or poetic license occurs, a footnote is provided.

A scansion guide containing scansion for each line of the poem can be downloaded from this book's GitHub repo: https://github.com/deckeraa/vita_caroli/blob/master/scansion_guide_vita_carolia_liber_1.pdf. A playlist containing read-along videos (with English translation) can be found on the ComprehensibleLatin YouTube channel: <https://www.youtube.com/@ComprehensibleLatin>.

This reader's edition was produced to meet the following goals:

- to make an inexpensive print copy of the Saxon Poet's *Vīta Carolī* available.
- to provide a legible (not photo-copied) text with macrons.
- to provide glossaries so that a Latin learner could read through this work without needing to consult additional books or dictionaries.
- to provide footnotes and maps.

This volume contains just book one; a volume of this sort containing all five books would be awkwardly large. Also, I wanted something that students could complete in around a semester.

Approximate statistics regarding the simplified text:

352 unique words, 1131 words total.
Average sentence length: 8.5 words.

Approximate statistics regarding the original text:

1110 unique words, 2900 words total.
Average sentence length: 18.6 words.

This reader edition of the *Vīta Carolī* is not a critical edition of the text; for that, please consult Jaffé's work which is cited in the bibliography. The glosses provided in the footnotes are intentionally woodenly literal; their purpose is to aid the reader in understanding the Latin, not to provide an idiomatic English translation. The glossaries for each page are created by a computer program that consults a dictionary and then are reviewed and emended line-by-line manually. AI tools are not used in the process. Due to the sheer volume of entries in the glossary,

there may be occasional mistakes. If you find one, please consider letting me know at decker49@gmail.com so that I can correct the book.

The Saxon Poet's *Vita Carolī* is a work of art, a carefully-crafted heroic poem. My simplified version should not be approached as a work of art but rather as a practical tool to give the intermediate student an easy text to prepare them for the original.

Finis introductiōnis.

Versiō Simplicissima

Francī vivēbant in Galliā. Erant duo rēgēs Francōrum: Carolus et Carolomannus, frāter eius. In annō 771, Carolomannus mortuus¹ est. Posteā Carolus erat rēx omnium Francōrum. Carolus iit ad villam, quae Carbōnāta vocātur. Et illīc Carolus suscēpit omnēs procerēs Carolomannī. Omnēs procerēs sē subdidērunt Carolō.

Sed uxor Carolomannī, filiī Carolomannī, et paucī aliī fūgērunt ad Ītaliā. Tunc vivēbant sub mūnīmine rēgis Dēsideriī.

Rēx Carolus celebrāvit Nātālem Dominī et Paschālia Fēsta in Attiniācō. Pāpa Paulus mortuus¹ est, et Adriānus suscēpit pontificātum.

Carolus collēgit procerēs ad concilium generāle in Wormaciā. Carolus dīxit: "Volō pugnāre contrā Saxonēs in bellō." Cūr? Quia Saxonēs vivēbant prope Francōs, et saepe invāsērunt finēs Francōrum.

Erant caedēs, incendia, et praedae prope finēs. Quoque, nātūra Saxonum erat ferōx et Saxonēs colēbant nōn Chrīstum sed daemōnēs.

Saxonēs nōn habēbant ūnum rēgem, sed habēbant multōs ducēs et multōs pāgōs. Ergō Saxonēs nōn potuērunt pugnāre pariter contrā Francōs.

Erant trēs partēs Saxonum: Westfalos in occiduā, Ostvalos in oriente, et Angariī inter Westfalos et Ostvalos.

¹*mortuus est* = he died.

ad: to, towards, at, according to	common accusative from natalis, natalis, natale
Adriānus: Pope Adrian I, who was Pope from February 1st 772 to December 25th 795	nātūra: nature; singular feminine nominative from nātūra, nātūrae
aliū: others; singular dative from alius, alia, aliud	nōn: not
Angariū: the Angarians, a Saxon tribe	occiduā: westerly; singular feminine nominative from occiduus, occidua, occiduum
annō: year; singular masculine ablative from annus, annī	omnēs: all, every; plural common nominative or accusative from omnis, omnis, omne
at: and	omnium: of all; plural genitive from omnis, omnis, omne
Attiniācō: likely Attigny in the Ardennes department of modern-day France	oriēnte: daybreak, dawn, East; singular ablative from oriēns, orientis
bellō: battle, war; singular neuter ablative from bellum, bellī	Ostvalōs: Eastphalians, members of a Saxon tribe
caedēs: slaughter; plural feminine nominative from caedis, caedis	pāgōs: district, region; plural masculine accusative from pāgus, pāgi
Carbōnāta: the name of a villa	pāpā: pope; singular masculine nominative from Pāpā, Pāpae
Carolō: Charlemagne, AD 748-814, King of the Franks and Emperor of the Western Roman Empire, member of the Carolingian Dynasty	pariter: equally, together
Carolomanni: of Carloman, son of Pepin the Short and co-ruler of the Frankish kingdom with Charlemagne	partēs: parts; plural feminine nominative from pars, partis
Carolomannus: Carloman, son of Pepin the Short and co-ruler of the Frankish kingdom with Charlemagne	Paschālia: Paschālia Fēsta = Easter, Paschal; plural neuter nominative from paschālis, paschālis, paschāle
Carolus: Charlemagne, AD 748-814, King of the Franks and Emperor of the Western Roman Empire, member of the Carolingian Dynasty	pauci: a few, little; plural masculine nominative from paucus, pauci
celebrāvit: he celebrated; 3rd person singular perfect active from celeb̄rō, celebrāre, celebrāvī, celebrātus	Paulus: Pope Paul I; Pope from May 29th 757 to June 28th 767 (ablative case)
Christum: Christ; singular masculine accusative from Christus, Christī	pontificātū: pontificate; singular masculine accusative from pontificātūs, pontificātūs
colebānt: they were worshiping; 3rd person plural imperfect active from colō, colere, coluī, cultus	posteā: thereafter, later
collēgit: he assembled, he collected; 3rd person singular perfect active from colligō, colligere, collēgī, collēctus	potuērunt: they were able to; 3rd person plural perfect active from possum, posse, potuī, -
concilium: council, assembly; singular neuter accusative from concilium, concili(i)	praedae: plunder; plural feminine nominative from praeda, praedae
contrā: against, away from, facing	procerēs: noblemen; plural masculine nominative or accusative from procer, proceris
cūr: why	prope: near, close
daemōnēs: demons; plural masculine accusative from daemōn, daemōnis	pugnāre: to fight; present active indicative from pugnō, pugnāre, pugnāvī, pugnātus
Dēsideriū: of Desiderius, final King of the Lombards (720-786)	quaē: which; singular female nominative of quis
dixit: he said; 3rd person singular perfect active from dicō, dicere, dīxī, dictus	quia: because
Domini: of the lord; singular masculine genitive from dominus, dominī	quoque: also
ducēs: leaders; plural masculine accusative from dux, ducis	rēgem: king; singular masculine accusative from rēx, rēgis
duo: two	rēgēs: kings; plural masculine nominative from rēx, rēgis
eiūs: his/her/its	rēgis: of the king; singular masculine genitive from rēx, rēgis
erant: they were; 3rd person plural imperfect active from sum, esse, fūi, futūrus	rēx: king; singular masculine nominative from rēx, rēgis
erat: he was; 3rd person singular imperfect active from sum, esse, fūi, futūrus	saepe: often
ergō: therefore	Saxōnēs: the Saxons
est: he is; 3rd person singular present active from sum, esse, fūi, futūrus	Saxōnum: of the Saxons
et: and	sē: themselves
ferōx: wild, bold, defiant; singular feminine nominative from ferōx, (gen.), ferōcīs	sed: but
fēsta: Paschālia Fēsta = Easter, festivals; plural neuter accusative from fēstus, fēsta, fēstūm	sub: below, under
filiū: sons; plural masculine nominative from filius, filī	subdīdērunt: they placed under; 3rd person plural perfect active from subdō, subdere, subdīdī, subdītus
finēs: boundaries, ends, limits; plural common accusative from finis, finis	suscēpīt: he undertook, he supported; 3rd person singular perfect active from suscipiō, suscipere, suscēpī, susceptus
Franci: the Franks	trēs: three; plural common nominative from trēs -es -ia, tertius -a -um, terī -ae -a, ter
Francōrum: of the Franks	tunc: then
Francōs: the Franks	ūnum: one; singular neuter nominative from ūnus -a -um, primus -a -um, singuli -ae -a, semel
frāter: brother; singular masculine nominative from frāter, frātris	uxor: wife; singular feminine nominative from uxor, uxōris
fūgērunt: they fled; 3rd person plural perfect active from fūgiō, fugere, fūgi, fugitus	vīllam: villa; singular feminine accusative from villa, vīllae
Gallīā: Gaul; singular feminine ablative from Gallia, Galliae	vīvēbānt: they were living; 3rd person plural imperfect active from vīvō, vivere, vīxi, vīctus
generāle: general; singular neuter accusative from generālis, generālis, generāle	vocātūr: it is called; 3rd person singular present passive from vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātus
habēbānt: they had; 3rd person plural imperfect active from habēo, habēre, habui, habitus	volō: I want; 1st person singular present active from volō, velle, voluī, -
iit: it went; 3rd person singular perfect active from eō, īre, iī, itus (irregular)	Westfalōs: Westphalians, members of a Saxon tribe
illīc: there	Wormaciā: in Worms, a city in Germany; singular feminine ablative from Wormacia, Wormaciae
in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)	
incendia: fires; plural neuter nominative from incendium, incendī	
inter: between, among, during	
invāsērunt: they invaded; 3rd person plural perfect active from invādō, invādere, invāsī, invāsus	
Ītaliām: Italy (accusative case)	
mōrtuus: mortuus est = he died; singular masculine nominative perfect participle from morior, morī, mortuus sum	
multōs: many; plural masculine accusative from multus, multa -um, -um, plurimus -a -um	
mūnīmīne: defence, fortification, rampart; singular neuter ablative from mūnīmen, mūnīminis	
Nātālēm: Nātālēm Domini = Christmas, birthday; singular	

Carolus statuit sibi¹ subdere gentem Saxonum. Vāstāvit terrās Saxonum lātē cum ferrō et ignī.

Erat castellum, nōmine Ērēsbūg. Ērēsbūg erat valdē forte. Prope Ērēsbūg erat simulācrum quod vocitābant Irmīnsul. Hoc simulācrum erat columnā magna et decōra. Rēx Carolus ēvertit hoc simulācrum.

Carolus mānsit tribus diēbus prope Eresburg, pugnāns contrā Saxonēs. Sed nōn erat aqua. Caelus erat serēnus et nōn habēbat nūbēs (et ergō nōn erat imber). Quoque nōn erat aqua in rīvīs, sed pulvis tantum. Sitis graviter fatīgābat castra Carolī. Sed Deus Omnipotēns fēcit mīrāculum: subitō multa aqua fluit per rīvōs āridōs, et exercitus Carolī tunc habēbat satis aquae. Deus fēcit hoc mīrāculum quia Carolus ēvertit simulācrum. Carolus vēnit ad amnem Wisūram et recēpit obsidēs ā Saxōnibus. Carolus rediit ad patriam cum magnā prōsperitāte.

¹*Charlemagne decided to subdue the people of the Saxons to himself.*

ā: from, out of, by, since	satis: enough
ad: to, towards, at, according to	Saxonēs: the Saxons (nominative or accusative case)
amnem: river; singular masculine accusative from amnis, amnis	Saxōnibus: the Saxons (ablative case)
aqua: water; singular feminine nominative from aqua, aquae	Saxōnum: of the Saxons (genitive case)
aquae: of water; singular feminine genitive from aqua, aquae	sed: but
āridōs: dry; plural masculine accusative from āridus, ārida -um,	serēnus: serene; singular masculine nominative from serēnus,
āridor -or -us, āridissimus -a -um	serēna, serēnum
caelus: heaven, sky; singular masculine nominative from caelus,	sibi: to himself; singular dative of sē
caeli	simulācrum: image, likeness, idol; singular neuter nominative
Carolus: Charlemagne, AD 748-814, King of the Franks and	from simulācrum, simulācrī
Emperor of the Western Roman Empire, member of the	sitis: thirst; singular feminine nominative from sitis, sitis
Carolingian Dynasty	statuī: he decided; 3rd person singular present active from
castellum: castle, stronghold; singular neuter nominative from	statuō, statuere, statuū, statūtus
castellum, castellī	subdere: to place under; present active infinitive from subdō,
castra: camp(s), forts; plural neuter accusative from castrum,	subdere, subdīdī, subditus
castrī	subitō: suddenly
columna: column; singular feminine nominative from columna,	tantum: only; (adverb)
columnae	terrās: lands; plural feminine accusative from terra, terrae
contrā: against, away from, facing	tribus: three; plural ablative from trēs -es -ia, tertius -a -um,
cum: with	terni -ae -a, ter
decora: elegance, beauty; singular feminine nominative from	tunc: then
decus, decoris	valdē: very
Deus: God; singular masculine nominative from Deus, Dei	västāvit: he ravaged, devastated; 3rd person singular perfect
diēbus: days; plural common ablative from diēs, diēi	active from västō, västare, västāvi, västātus
erat: he was; 3rd person singular imperfect active from sum,	vēnit: he came; 3rd person singular present active from veniō,
esse, fūi, futūrus	venire, vēni, ventus
Ērēsburg: a Saxon refuge castle near modern-day	vocitābant: they called; 3rd person plural imperfect active from
Obermarsberg	vocitō, vocitāre, vocitāvi, vocitātus
ergō: therefore	Wisuram: the River Weser, the second longest river in Germany
et: and	
ēvertit: he overturned, destroyed; 3rd person singular present	
active from ēvertō, ēvertere, ēvertī, ēversus	
exercitus: army; singular masculine nominative from exercitus,	
exercitūs	
fatīgābat: it was wearying; 3rd person singular imperfect active	
from fatīgo, fatigare, fatigavi, fatigatus	
fēcit: He did; 3rd person singular perfect active from faciō,	
facere, fēci, factus	
ferrō: with sword; singular neuter ablative from ferrum, ferī	
fluit: it flows; 3rd person singular present active from fluō,	
fluere, flūxi, flūxus	
forte: strong; singular neuter nominative from fortis, forte	
gentem: people, clan, nation; singular feminine accusative from	
gēns, gentis	
graviter: gravely	
habēbat: he had; 3rd person singular imperfect active from	
habēō, habēre, habui, habitus	
hoc: this; singular neuter nominative or accusative from hic,	
haec, hoc	
īgni: with fire; singular masculine ablative from īgnis, īgnis	
imber: rain; singular masculine nominative from imber, imbris	
in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)	
Irminsul: the name of an idol, or type of idol that the Saxons	
worshipped	
lātē: widely; adverb from lātus, -a, -um	
māgna: large; singular feminine nominative from māgnus,	
māgna -um, major -or -us, maximus -a -um	
mānsit: he remained; 3rd person singular perfect active from	
manēō, manēre, mānsi, mānsus	
mīrāculum: miracle; singular neuter accusative from mīrāculum,	
mīrāculi	
multa: much; singular feminine nominative from multus, multa	
-um, - , plūrimus -a -um	
nōmine: name; singular neuter ablative from nōmen, nōminis	
nōn: not	
nūbēs: clouds; plural feminine accusative from nūbēs, nūbis	
obsidēs: hostages; plural masculine accusative from obses,	
obsidis	
omnipotēns: all-powerful; singular masculine nominative from	
omnipotēns, (gen.), omnipotentis	
patriam: fatherland; singular feminine accusative from patria,	
patriae	
per: through	
prope: near, close	
prosperitātē: success, prosperity; singular feminine ablative	
from prosperitās, prosperitātis	
pugnāns: fighting; singular nominative present participle from	
pugnō, pugnāre, pugnāvi, pugnātus	
pulvis: dust; singular masculine nominative from pulvis, pulveris	
quia: because	
quoque: also	
quod: which; singular neuter accusative of qui	
recēpit: he received; 3rd person singular perfect active from	
recipiō, recipere, recipēi, receptus	
rediit: he returned; 3rd person singular perfect active from	
redeō, redire, rediū(i)l, rēditus	
rēx: king; singular masculine nominative from rēx, rēgis	
rīvīs: small streams; plural masculine ablative from rīvus, rīvī	
rīvōs: small streams; plural masculine accusative from rīvus, rīvī	

Pāpa Adriānus mīsit lēgātōs ad rēgem Carolum. Adriānus dēposit auxilium Carolī magnī contrā Langobardōs¹. In illō tempore Dēsiderius erat rēx Langobardōrum. Sed lēgātī Adriānī nōn potuērunt ambulāre ad terrās Francōrum quia terra Langōbardorum erat inter Rōmam et terrās Francōrum. Ergo, lēgātus nōmine Petrus cōnscendit nāvem et petiit Massiliam per longō circuitū mare. Deinde post longum iter terrēnum, Petrus adīvit in vīllā Theodōne vocātā. Petrus dēposit auxilium Carolī, et Carolus dēcrēvit dēfendere Rōmānōs.

Atque Carolus collēgit agmen et pervēnit in urbem Genuam. Carolus dēcrēvit dīvīsit agmen suum et invādere Langōbardōs cum geminō bellō. Una pars iit per montem Iovis cum duce Bernhardō. Alia pars iit per Cīnisium. Duplex exercitus irruerat arva Ītaliae, lātē vastāns rēgnum opulentum.

¹(Pope) Adrian requested the help of Charlemagne against the Lombards. The Lombard kingdom was just north of Rome, so the Pope wanted the Frankish Kingdom to protect him against Lombard dominance.

ad: to, towards, at, according to
 adivit: he approached, visited; 3rd person singular perfect active from *adeō*, *adīre*, *adīvī*(*ī*), *adītus*
 Adriāni: of Pope Adrian I, who was Pope from February 1st 772 to December 25th 795
 Adriānus: Pope Adrian I, who was Pope from February 1st 772 to December 25th 795
 agmen: marching army; singular neuter accusative from *agmen*, *agminis*
 alia: other; singular feminine nominative from *alius*, *alia*, *aliud*
 ambulāre: to walk; present active infinitive from *ambulō*, *ambulāre*, *ambulāvī*, *ambulātus*
 arva: fields, countryside; plural neuter accusative from *arvum*, *arvi*
 atque: and
 auxilium: help, aid; singular neuter accusative from *auxilium*, *auxiliī*
 bellō: battle, war; singular neuter ablative from *bellum*, *bellī*
 Bernhardō: Bernard, son of Charles Martel and uncle of Charlemagne
 Caroli: of Charlemagne, AD 748-814, King of the Franks and Emperor of the Western Roman Empire, member of the Carolingian Dynasty
 Carolum: Charlemagne, AD 748-814, King of the Franks and Emperor of the Western Roman Empire, member of the Carolingian Dynasty
 Carolus: Charlemagne, AD 748-814, King of the Franks and Emperor of the Western Roman Empire, member of the Carolingian Dynasty
 Cinisium: probably a city or region in the Lombard Kingdom, perhaps the city of Cassino
 circuitū: path, circuit, outer shore; singular neuter ablative from *circitus*, *circitūs*
 collēgit: he assembled, he collected; 3rd person singular perfect active from *colligō*, *colligere*, *collēgi*, *collēctus*
 cōscendit: he got in, climbed up, mounted; 3rd person singular present active from *cōscendō*, *cōscendere*, *cōscendi*, *cōscēnsus*
 contrā: against, away from, facing
 cum: with
 dēcrēvit: he decided; 3rd person singular perfect active from *dēcernō*, *dēcernere*, *dēcrēvī*, *dēcrētus*
 dēfendere: to defend; present active infinitive from *dēfendō*, *dēfendere*, *dēfēndī*, *dēfēnsus*
 deinde: after
 dēpōscit: he asked for, requested, demanded; 3rd person singular present active from *dēpōscō*, *dēpōscere*, *dēpōscī*, -
 Dēsiderius: King Desiderius, final King of the Lombards (720-786)
 dīvīsit: he divided; 3rd person singular perfect active from *dīvidō*, *dīvidere*, *dīvīsī*, *dīvīsus*
 duce: leader; singular masculine ablative from *dux*, *ducis*
 duplex: two-fold, double; singular nominative from *duplex*, (gen.), *duplicis*
 erat: he was; 3rd person singular imperfect active from *sum*, *esse*, *fūi*, *futūrus*
 ergō: therefore
 et: and
 exercitus: army; singular masculine nominative from *exercitus*, *exercitūs*
 Francōrum: of the Franks
 geminō: two-fold, double; singular masculine ablative from *geminus*, *gemina*, *geminum*
 Genuam: Genua, modern-day Genoa, Italy
 iī: it went; 3rd person singular perfect active from *eō*, *īre*, *iī*, *ītus* (irregular)
 illō: these; singular masculine or neuter ablative from *ille*, *illa*, *illud*
 in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
 inter: between, among, during
 invādere: to invade; present active infinitive from *invādō*, *invādere*, *invāsī*, *invāsus*
 Iovis: Jovis, Jupiter
 irruerat: it had forced its way in; 3rd person singular pluperfect active from *irruō*, *irruere*, *irruī*, *irruttus*
 Italiae: Italy (genitive or locative case)
 iter: journey, trip; singular neuter accusative from *iter*, *itineris*
 Langōbardōrum: of the Lombards
 Langōbardōs: the Lombards
 lātē: widely; adverb from *lātus*, *-a*, *-um*
 lēgāti: legates, ambassadors; plural masculine nominative from *lēgātus*, *lēgātī*
 lēgātōs: legate, ambassador; plural masculine accusative from *lēgātus*, *lēgātī*
 lēgātus: legate, ambassador; singular masculine nominative from *lēgātus*, *lēgātī*
 longō: long, far; singular masculine ablative from *longus*, *longa*, *-um*, longior *-or*, *-us*, longissimus *-a*, *-um*

longum: long, far; singular neuter accusative from *longus*, *longa*, *-um*, longior *-or*, *-us*, longissimus *-a*, *-um*
 māgnī: great; singular masculine genitive from *māgnus*, *māgna*, *-um*, major *-or*, *-us*, maximus *-a*, *-um*
 mare: sea; singular neuter accusative from *mare*, *maris*
 Massiliam: Marseille, a city in southern France
 mīsit: he sent; 3rd person singular perfect active from *mittō*, *mittere*, *mīsī*, *missus*
 montem: mountain; singular masculine accusative from *mōns*, *montis*
 nāvem: boat; singular feminine accusative from *nāvis*, *nāvis*
 nōmīne: name; singular neuter ablative from *nōmen*, *nōminis*
 nōn: not
 opulentum: rich; singular masculine accusative from *opulentus*, *-a*, *-um*
 pāpā: pope; singular masculine nominative from *Pāpā*, *Pāpae*
 pars: part; singular feminine nominative from *pars*, *partis*
 per: through
 pervēnit: he arrived; 3rd person singular present active from *pervenīō*, *pervenire*, *pervēnī*, *perventus*
 petīt: he asked for; 3rd person singular perfect active from *petō*, *petere*, *petīvī*, *petitus*
 Petrus: Peter; singular masculine nominative from *Petrus*, *Petri*
 post: behind, after, since
 potuērunt: they were able to; 3rd person plural perfect active from *possum*, *posse*, *potuī*, -
 quia: because
 rēgem: king; singular masculine accusative from *rēx*, *rēgis*
 rēgnū: kingdom; singular neuter accusative from *rēgnū*, *rēgnī*
 rēx: king; singular masculine nominative from *rēx*, *rēgis*
 Rōmām: Rome; singular feminine accusative from *Rōmā*, *Rōmāe*
 Rōmānōs: Romans; plural masculine accusative from *romanus*, *romana*, *romanum*
 sed: but
 suum: his; singular masculine accusative from *suus*, *sui*
 tempore: time, period; singular neuter ablative from *tempus*, *temporis*
 terra: land; singular feminine nominative from *terra*, *terrae*
 terrās: lands; plural feminine accusative from *terra*, *terrae*
 terrēnum: land, ground; singular neuter accusative from *terrenus*, *terrena*, *terrenum*
 Theodōne: the name of a villa that Charlemagne was in
 ūna: one; singular feminine nominative from *ūnus*, *-a*, *-um*
 primus *-a*, *-um*, *singulī*, *-ae*, *-a*, *semel*
 urbēm: city; singular feminine accusative from *urbs*, *urbis*
 vāstāns: ravaging, devastating; singular nominative present participle from *vāstō*, *vāstāre*, *vāstāvī*, *vāstātus*
 villā: farm, villa; singular feminine ablative from *villa*, *villae*
 vocāta: having been called; singular feminine nominative perfect passive participle from *vocō*, *vocāre*, *vocāvī*, *vocātus*

Dēsiderius fugāvit in urbem Ticīnum. Exercitus Carōlī iit ad Ticīnum et temptāvit irrumpere mūrōs urbis, sed nōn poterat. Carolus iit ad Rōmam et ūrāvit. Ad Ticīnum rediit. Urbs erat fessa repugnandī¹, et populus urbis dedit urbem Carōlō. Tunc Dēsiderius erat captīvus. Fīlius illīus, nōmine Adalgis, fugāvit ad Cōstantīnum. Cōstantīnus recēpit eum. Adalgis permānsit in honōre cum Cōstantīnum usque ad ultima vītae.

Intereā, Saxonēs ausī sunt invādere finēs Francōrum. Saxonēs pugnābant contrā pāgum, nōmine Hassī. Cūr invasērunt Saxonēs? Quia Rēx Carolus nōn adfuit. Saxonēs iērunt ad locum, nōmine Frīdēshlar, et trādidērunt multās rēs ā flammīs. Saxonēs quoque voluērunt trādere flammīs ecclēsiām quam Sānctus Bonifācius sacrāverat Chrīstō. (Ōlim, Sānctus Bonifācius ēvertit simulācrum, arborem nōmine "Donar's Oak".) Sed Saxonēs nōn potuērunt trādere flammīs hanc ecclēsiām, quia ingēns terror dīvīnitus invāsit eōs et Saxonēs fūgērunt.

¹*fessa repugnandī* = tired of fighting

ā: from, out of, by, since	pāgus, pāgī
ad: to, towards, at, according to	permansit: he remained; 3rd person singular perfect active from permaneō, permanēre, permansi, permansus
adfuīt: he is present; 3rd person singular present active from adsum, adesse, adfuī, adfutūrus	populus: people, populace; singular masculine nominative from populus, populi
Adalgīs: Adalgis, son of Desiderius	poterat: he was able to; 3rd person singular imperfect active from possum, posse, potuī, -
arbōrem: tree; singular feminine accusative from arbor, arboris	potuērunt: they were able to; 3rd person plural perfect active from possum, posse, potuī, -
ausī: ausī sunt = they dared; plural masculine nominative perfect passive participle from audeō, audēre, ausum	pugnābant: they were fighting; 3rd person plural imperfect active from pugnō, pugnāre, pugnāvī, pugnātūs
Bonifācius: Saint Boniface, AD 675-754	quam: which; singular feminine accusative from qui
captīvus: captive; singular masculine nominative from captīvus, captīva, captīvum	quia: because
Caroli: of Charlemagne, AD 748-814, King of the Franks and Emperor of the Western Roman Empire, member of the Carolingian Dynasty	quoque: also
Carolō: to Charlemagne, AD 748-814, King of the Franks and Emperor of the Western Roman Empire, member of the Carolingian Dynasty	recēpit: he received; 3rd person singular perfect active from recipiō, recipere, recēpī, receptus
Carolus: Charlemāgne, AD 748-814, King of the Franks and Emperor of the Western Roman Empire, member of the Carolingian Dynasty	rediit: he returned; 3rd person singular perfect active from redeō, redire, redi(i)ī, reditus
Chrīstō: Christ	repūgnāndī: of fighting back; singular masculine genitive future passive participle from repūgnō, repūgnāre, repūgnāvī, repūgnātūs
Cōnstantīnum: Constantine V, Emperor of the Byzantine Empire from 741 to 775; singular masculine accusative from Cōnstantīnus, Cōnstantīnī	rēs: things; plural feminine accusative from rēs, reī
Cōnstantīnus: Constantine V, Emperor of the Byzantine Empire from 741 to 775; singular masculine nominative from Constantinus, Constantīnī	rēx: king; singular masculine nominative from rēx, rēgīs
contrā: against, away from, facing	Rōmām: Rome; singular feminine accusative from Rōma, Rōmae
cum: with	sacrāverat: he had consecrated; 3rd person singular pluperfect active from sacrō, sacrāre, sacrāvī, sacrātūs
cūr: why	sānctus: holy, saint
dedit: he gave; 3rd person singular perfect active from dō, dare, dedi, datus	Saxōnēs: the Saxons
Dēsiderīus: King Desiderius, final King of the Lombards (720-786)	sed: but
dīvīnitus: divinely, of heaven (adverb)	simulācrum: image, likeness; singular neuter nominative from simulācrum, simulācī
ecclēsīam: church; singular feminine accusative from ecclēsīa, ecclēsīae	temptāvīt: he tried; 3rd person singular perfect active from temptō, temptāre, temptāvī, temptātūs
eōs: to them; plural masculine accusative from is, ea, id	terror: terror; singular masculine nominative from terror, terrōris
erat: he was; 3rd person singular imperfect active from sum, esse, fūi, futūrus	Ticinūm: Pavia a.k.a. Ticinum, capital of the Kingdom of the Lombards from 572 to 774.
et: and	trādere: to hand over; present active infinitive from trādō,
eum: to him; singular masculine accusative from is, ea, id	trādere, trādīdī, trādītūs
ēvertīt: he overturned, destroyed; 3rd person singular present active from ēvertō, ēvertēre, ēvertī, ēversus	trādīdērunt: they had handed over; 3rd person plural perfect active from trādō, trādere, trādīdī, trādītūs
exercitūs: army; singular masculine nominative from exercitūs, exercitūs	tunc: then
fessa: tired; singular feminine nominative from fessus, fessa, fessum	ultīmā: last (parts of life); plural neuter accusative from -, -, ulterior -or -us, ultīmūs -a -um
filiūs: son; singular masculine nominative from filius, filī	urbēm: city; singular feminine accusative from urbs, urbis
finēs: boundaries, ends, limits; plural common accusative from finis, finis	urbīs: city; singular feminine genitive from urbs, urbis
flammīs: flames; plural feminine dative or ablative from flamma, flammae	ūsque: until, all the way, up until
Francōrum: of the Franks	vītāe: of life; singular feminine genitive from vīta, vītāe
Fridēshlār: Fritzlar, Germany	voluērunt: they wanted; 3rd person plural perfect active from volō, velle, voluī, -
fugāvit: he routed, chased away; 3rd person singular perfect active from fugō, fugare, fugāvī, fugātūs	
fūgērunt: they fled; 3rd person plural perfect active from fugiō, fugere, fūgī, fugitus	
hanc: this; singular feminine accusative of hic, haec, hoc	
Hassi: Hesse, a region in Germany	
honore: honor; singular masculine ablative from honor, honōrīs	
iērunt: they went; 3rd person plural perfect active from eō, ire, iī, itus	
iīt: it went; 3rd person singular perfect active from eō, ire, iī, itus	
illīus: of that; singular genitive from ille, illa, illud	
in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)	
ingēns: huge, enormous; singular nominative from ingēns, ingētīs (gen.), ingētior -or -us, ingētissimūs -a -um	
intereā: during	
invādere: to invade; present active infinitive from invādō, invādere, invāsī, invāsus	
invāsērunt: they invaded; 3rd person plural perfect active from invādō, invādere, invāsī, invāsus	
invāsīt: he invaded; 3rd person singular perfect active from invādō, invādere, invāsī, invāsus	
irrumpere: to invade, penetrate; present active infinitive from irrumpō, irrumpere, irrūpī, irruptus	
locūm: place; singular masculine accusative from locus, locī	
multās: many; plural feminine accusative from multus, multa -um, -, plūrimūs -a -um	
mūrōs: city walls; plural masculine accusative from mūrus, mūrī	
nōmine: name; singular neuter ablative from nōmen, nōminis	
nōn: not	
ōlīm: one day, once upon a time	
ōrāvit: he prayed; 3rd person singular perfect active from ōrō, ōrāre, ōrāvī, ōrātūs	
pāgūm: district, region; singular masculine accusative from	

Annō 775

Rēx dūxit tempus hiemis in vīllā nōmine Carisiacō. Carolus convocāvit omnēs procerēs ad cōnsilium. Et dīxit: "Saxonēs colunt daemonēs, et nōn colunt Chrīstum. Saxonēs nōn volunt vīvere in pāce, sed saepe volunt invādere finēs Francōrum. Ergō, dēbēmus pugnāre in bellō contrā Saxonēs et dēbēmus ēvertere simulacra eōrum." Carolus trānsīvit flūmen Rhēnum cum agmine suō et pugnāvit contrā castellum in Sigiburg. Tunc petiit Eresburg. Saxonēs dēstrūxerant castellum in Eresburg, ergō Carolus mūnīvit rūrsus. Tunc Carolus pervēnit ad amnem Wisūram. Erat turba magna prope amnem. Turba voluit obsistere agminī Carōlī. Sed turba fūgit in certāmine. Carolus prōstrāverat innumerōs dē turbā.

Inde Carolus iit in regiōnēs Osterliudi. Vir, nōmine Hessī, occurrit Carolō. Hessī voluit facere pācem inter gentem suam et Carolum. Ergō Ostvalos spospondērunt iūrāmenta et dedērunt obsidēs Carōlō, et erat pāx.

ad: to, towards, at, according to	obsidēs
agmine: army; singular neuter ablative from agmen, agminis	obsistere: to oppose, resist, withstand; present active infinitive from obsistō, obsistere, obstītī, obstitus
agminī: to the army; singular neuter dative from agmen, agminis	occurrit: he ran; 3rd person singular perfect from occurrō, occurrere, occurrī, occursus
amnem: river; singular masculine accusative from amnis, amnis	omnēs: all, every; plural common accusative from omnis, omnis, omne
annō: year; singular masculine ablative from annus, anni	Osterliudi: another name of the Eastphalians
bellō: battle, war; singular neuter ablative from bellum, bellī	Ostvalōs: Eastphalians, members of a Saxon tribe
Cārisiācō: the name of a villa	pāce: peace; singular feminine ablative from pāx, pācis
Carolī: of Charlemagne, AD 748-814, King of the Franks and Emperor of the Western Roman Empire, member of the Carolingian Dynasty (genitive case)	pācem: peace; singular feminine accusative from pāx, pācis
Carolō: to Charlemagne, AD 748-814, King of the Franks and Emperor of the Western Roman Empire, member of the Carolingian Dynasty (dative case)	pāx: peace; singular feminine nominative from pāx, pācis
Carolum: Charlemagne, AD 748-814, King of the Franks and Emperor of the Western Roman Empire, member of the Carolingian Dynasty (accusative case)	pervenī: he arrived; 3rd person singular perfect active from perveniō, pervenire, pervēnī, perventus
Carolus: Charlemagne, AD 748-814, King of the Franks and Emperor of the Western Roman Empire, member of the Carolingian Dynasty (nominative case)	petiit: he sought; 3rd person singular perfect active from petō, petere, petīvī, petūtus
castellum: castle, stronghold; singular neuter accusative from castellum, castellī	procerēs: noblemen; plural masculine accusative from procer, proceris
certāmine: fight, contest, struggle; singular neuter ablative from certāmen, certāminis	prope: near, close
Chrīstum: Christ; singular masculine accusative from Chrīstus, Chrīsti	prostrāvērat: he had struck down; 3rd person singular pluperfect active from prosternō, prosternere, prostrāvī, prostrātus
colunt: they worship; 3rd person plural present active from colō, colere, colui, cultus	pugnārē: to fight; present active infinitive from pugnō, pugnāre, pugnāvī, pugnātus
cōsiliū: plan, advice, council; singular neuter accusative from cōsiliū, cōsiliū	pugnāvit: he fought; 3rd person singular perfect active from pugnō, pugnārē, pugnāvī, pugnātus
contrā: against	regionēs: regions; plural feminine accusative from regiō, regiōnīs
convocāvit: he called together, assembled; 3rd person singular perfect active from convocō, convocāre, convocāvī, convocātus	rēx: king; singular masculine nominative from rēx, rēgis
cum: with	Rhēnum: the Rhine; singular masculine accusative from Rhēnus, Rhēnī
daemōnēs: demons; plural masculine accusative from daemōn, daemōnis	rūrsus: again
dē: of, from, away from, down from	saepe: often
dēbēmus: we should, we ought; 1st person plural present active from dēbeō, dēbēre, dēbūi, dēbitus	Saxōnēs: the Saxons
dedērunt: they gave; 3rd person plural perfect active from dō, dare, dedi, datus	sed: but
dēstrūxerant: they had destroyed; 3rd person plural pluperfect active from dēstrōu, dēstruere, dēstrūxī, dēstrūctus	Sigiburg: A Saxon hillfort in Western Germany
dīxit: he said; 3rd person singular perfect active from dīcō, dīcere, dīxi, dīctus	simulācra: images, likenesses; plural neuter accusative from simulācrum, simulācruī
dūxit: he spent; 3rd person singular perfect from dūcō, dūcere, dūxi, ductus	suām: his; singular feminine acc. from suus
eōrum: their; plural neuter genitive	suō: his; singular dative or ablative of suus
erat: he was; 3rd person singular imperfect active from sum, esse, fui, futūrus	tempus: time, period; singular neuter accusative from tempus, temporis
Ērēsburg: a Saxon refuge castle near modern-day Obermarsberg	transvit: he crossed; 3rd person singular perfect active from trānseō, trānsire, trānsivī, trānsitus
ergō: therefore	tunc: then
et: and	turba: crowd; singular feminine nominative from turba, turbae
ēvertere: to overturn, destroy; present active infinitive from ēvertō, ēvertere, ēvertī, ēversus	spondērunt: they promised; 3rd person plural perfect from spondeō, spondēre, spopondī, spōnsum
facere: to make, to do; present active infinitive from faciō, facere, fēcī, factus	villā: villa; singular feminine ablative from villa, villae
finēs: boundaries, ends, limits; plural common accusative from finis, finis	vir: man; singular masculine nominative from vir, virī
flūmen: river; singular neuter accusative from flūmen, flūminis	vivere: to live; present active infinitive from vivō, vivere, vīxī, vīctus
Francōrūm: of the Franks	voluit: he wanted; 3rd person singular perfect active from volō, velle, volūi, -
fugit: he fled; 3rd person singular perfect active from fugiō, fugere, fūgī, fugitus	volunt: they want; plural 3rd person present from volō, velle, volūi (irr.)
gentēm: people, clan, nation; singular feminine accusative from gēns, gentis	Wisuram: the River Weser, the second longest river in Germany
Hessi: the name of a man sent to Charlemagne to negotiate peace	
hiemis: of winter; singular feminine genitive from hiemps, hiemis	
iit: it went; 3rd person singular perfect active from eō, īre, īi, ītus (irregular)	
in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)	
inde: from there, since	
innumerōs: countless; plural masculine accusative from innumerus, innumera, innumerum	
inter: between, among, during	
invādēre: to invade; present active infinitive from invādō, invādere, invāsī, invāsus	
iūrāmenta: oaths; plural neuter accusative from iūrāmentum, iūrāmentī	
māgna: large; singular feminine nominative from māgnus, māgna -um, major -or -us, maximus -a -um	
mūnīvit: he fortified; 3rd person singular perfect active from mūniō, mūnire, mūnīvī, mūnītus	
nōmine: name; singular neuter ablative from nōmen, nōminis	
nōn: not	
obsidēs: hostages; plural masculine accusative from obses,	

Carolus posuit partem exercituum iuxtā amnem Wisuram. Hī mīlitēs erat sēcūrī et nōn habēbant cautēlam. Ergō Saxonēs fēcērunt fraudem: quīdam mīlitēs Francōrum ferēbant pābula equīs ad castra, et agmen Saxonum permiscuit cum Francīs. Saxonēs finxērunt esse amīcōs et quoque ferēbunt pābula. Itaque Saxonēs intrāvērunt castrum Francōrum. Dum Francī dormiēbant, Saxonēs fēcērunt caedem magnam et necāvērunt multōs Francōs. Tunc Francī nōn dormiēbant, et coepērunt pugnāre contrā Saxonēs. Saxonēs fugāvērunt ā castrīs. Posteā Carolus vēnit ad castrum et pugnābat contrā Saxonēs, necāvit multōs, et rediit ad terrās Francōrum.

ā: from, out of, by, since
 ad: to, towards, at, according to
 agmen: marching army; singular neuter nominative from
 agmen, agminis
 amīcōs: friends; plural masculine accusative from amicus, amica
 -um, amicior -or -us, amicissimus -a -um
 amnem: river; singular masculine accusative from amnis, amnis
 caudem: slaughter; singular feminine accusative from caedēs,
 caedis
 Carolus: Charlemagne, AD 748-814, King of the Franks and
 Emperor of the Western Roman Empire, member of the
 Carolingian Dynasty
 castra: forts; plural neuter accusative from castrum, castrī
 castris: forts; plural neuter ablative from castrum, castrī
 castrum: fort; singular neuter accusative from castrum, castrī
 cautēlam: caution; singular feminine accusative from cautēla,
 cautēlae
 coepērunt: they started; from coepī, coepisse, coepī, coeptum
 contrā: against, away from, facing
 cum: with
 dormiēbant: they were sleeping; 3rd person plural imperfect
 active from dormiō, dormire, dormīvi, dormitus
 dum: while, as long as, until
 equis: for the horses; plural masculine ablative from equus, equī
 erat: he was; 3rd person singular imperfect active from sum,
 esse, fuī, futūrus
 ergō: therefore
 esse: to be
 et: and
 exercitūm: of armies; plural masculine genitive from exercitus,
 exercitūs
 fēcērunt: they did, they made; 3rd person plural perfect active
 from faciō, facere, fēcī, factus
 ferēbant: they were bringing, bearing; 3rd person plural
 imperfect active from ferō, ferre, tuli, lātus
 finxērunt: they feigned, pretended; 3rd person plural perfect
 active from fingō, fingere, finxi, fictus
 Franci: the Franks
 Francis: the Franks
 Francōrum: of the Franks
 Francōs: the Franks
 fraudem: fraud; singular feminine accusative from fraus, fraudis
 fugāvērunt: they routed, chased away; 3rd person plural perfect
 active from fugō, fugāre, fugāvī, fugātus
 habēbant: they had; 3rd person plural imperfect active from
 habeō, habēre, habuī, habitus
 hī: to these; plural masculine nominative of hic, haec, hoc
 intrāvērunt: they entered; 3rd person plural perfect active from
 intrō, intrāre, intrāvī, intrātus
 itaque: so then, therefore
 iuxtā: near, nearly
 māgnam: large; singular feminine accusative from māgnus,
 māgna -um, major -or -us, maximus -a -um
 militēs: soldiers; plural masculine nominative from miles, mīlitis
 multōs: many; plural masculine accusative from multus, multa
 -um, -i, plūrimus -a -um
 necāvērunt: they killed, destroyed; 3rd person plural perfect
 active from necō, necāre, necāvī, necātus
 necāvit: he killed, destroyed; 3rd person singular perfect active
 from necō, necāre, necāvī, necātus
 nōn: not
 pābula: fodder, food, nourishment; plural neuter nominative
 from pābulum, pābuli
 partem: part; singular feminine accusative from pars, partis
 permiscuit: he mixed together; 3rd person singular perfect
 active from permisceō, permiscere, permiscui, permixtus
 posteā: thereafter, later
 posuit: he put; 3rd person singular perfect active from pōnō,
 pōnere, posuī, positus
 pugnābat: he was fighting; 3rd person singular imperfect active
 from pugnō, pugnāre, pugnāvī, pugnātus
 pugnāre: to fight; present active infinitive from pugnō, pugnāre,
 pugnāvī, pugnātus
 quī: who; plural masculine nominative of quī
 quīdam: certain; plural masculine nominative from quīdam
 quoque: also
 rediit: he returned; 3rd person singular perfect active from
 redeō, redire, rediiv(i)ī, reditus
 Saxonēs: the Saxons
 Saxōnum: of the Saxons
 sēcūrī: untroubled, carefree; plural masculine nominative from
 sēcūrus, sēcūra, sēcūrum
 terrās: lands; plural feminine accusative from terra, terrae
 tunc: then
 vēnit: he came; 3rd person singular present active from veniō,
 venire, vēni, ventus
 Wisuram: the River Weser, the second longest river in Germany

Annō 776

Carolus audīvit quod in Ītaliā erat tirannum nōmine Hrodgaudum. Hrodgaūdum erat ducem Foroiulensibus sub Rēge Carolō, sed rebellāvit contrā Carolum. Hrodgaudum voluit sibi subdere tōtam Ītaliā. Ergō Carolus iussit agmen suum trānsīre iuga Alpīnārum. Tunc Carolus interfēcit Hrodgaudum.

Carolus revertit ad terrās Francōrum. Erat rebelliō Saxonum. Saxonēs pugnābant contrā castrum Sigiburg, sed nōn potuērunt id vincere. Carolus conventum prōcērum fēcit in urbe Wormaciā et collēgit agmen. Exercitus pugnāvit fortiter contrā Saxonēs et fēcit caedem magnam. Carolus vēnit ad fontēs amnis Lyppiae et invēnit catervam Saxonum. Hominēs in catervā dīxērunt: "Ō Rēx, ignōsce scelera nostra. Volumus crēdere in Chrīstō!" Ergō Carolus nōn pugnābat contrā istōs Saxonēs et multī hominēs suscēpērunt baptismum.

ad: to, towards, at, according to	pugnāvit: he fought; 3rd person singular perfect active from
agmen: marching army; singular neuter accusative from agmen, agminis	pugnō, pugnāre, pugnāvi, pugnātus
Alpīnārum: Alpine; plural feminine genitive from Alpīnus, Alpīna, Alpīnum	quod: what; singular neuter nom. or acc. of qui
amnis: river; singular masculine genitive from amnis, amnī	rebellāvit: he rebelled; 3rd person singular perfect active from
annō: year; singular masculine ablative from annus, annī	rebellō, rebellāre, rebellāvī, rebellātus
audiū: he heard; 3rd person singular perfect active from audiō, audire, audīvi, auditus	rebelliō: renewal of war, rebellion; singular feminine nominative from rebellīō, rebellīōnis
baptismum: baptism; singular neuter accusative from baptismum, baptisi	rēge: king; singular masculine ablative from rēx, rēgis
caedēm: slaughter; singular feminine accusative from caedēs, caedis	revertī: he returned; 3rd person singular present active from
Carolō: to Charlemagne, AD 748-814, King of the Franks and Emperor of the Western Roman Empire, member of the Carolingian Dynasty	revertō, revertere, revertī, reversus
Carolūm: Charlemagne, AD 748-814, King of the Franks and Emperor of the Western Roman Empire, member of the Carolingian Dynasty	rēx: king; singular masculine nominative from rēx, rēgis
castrum: fort; singular neuter accusative from castrum, castri	Saxōnēs: the Saxons
caterva: crowd; singular feminine nominative from caterva, catervae	Saxōnum: of the Saxons
catervam: crowd; singular feminine accusative from caterva, catervae	scelerā: crimes; plural neuter accusative from scelus, sceleris
Christō: Christ	sed: but
collēgit: he assembled, he collected; 3rd person singular perfect active from colligō, colligere, collēgi, collēctus	sibi: to himself; singular dative of sē
contrā: against	Sigiburg: A Saxon hillfort in Western Germany
conventū: meeting, convention; singular masculine accusative from conventus, conventū	sub: below, under
crēdere: to believe; present active infinitive from crēdō, crēdere, crēdidi, crēditus	subdere: to place under; present active infinitive from subdō, subdere, subdidi, subditus
dīxērunt: they said; 3rd person plural perfect active from dīcō, dīcere, dīxi, dīctus	suscēpērunt: they undertook; 3rd person plural perfect active from suscipiō, suscipere, suscēpi, susceptus
ducēm: leader; singular masculine accusative from dux, ducis	suū: his; singular neuter accusative from suū, sui
erat: there was; 3rd person singular imperfect active from sum, esse, fuī, futūrus	terrās: lands; plural feminine accusative from terra, terrae
ergō: therefore	tōtām: whole, total; singular feminine accusative from tōtūs, tōtā, tōtūm (gen. -ius)
et: and	trānsire: to go over, to cross; present active infinitive from
eum: to him; singular masculine accusative from is, ea, id	trānseō, trānsire, trānsīvi, trānsitus
exercitus: army; singular masculine nominative from exercitus, exercitūs	tunc: then
fēcīt: he did; 3rd person singular perfect active from faciō, facere, fēcī, factus	tirannūm: tyrant; singular masculine nominative variant spelling from tyrannus, tyranni
fontēs: fountains, headwaters; plural masculine accusative from fōns, fontis	urbe: city; singular feminine ablative from urbs, urbis
Forōiulēnsibus: with those living in Friuli, a historical region of northeast Italy	vēnīt: he came; 3rd person singular perfect active from veniō, venire, vēnī, ventus
fortiter: strongly (adverb from fortis, forte)	vincere: to conquer; present active infinitive from vincō, vincere, vīcī, victus
Francōrum: of the Franks	voluit: he wanted; 3rd person singular perfect active from volō, velle, volū, -
hominēs: persons; plural masculine nominative or accusative from homō, hominis	volumus: we want; 1st person plural present active from volō, velle, volū, -
Hrodgaudum: Hrodgaud (or Rodgand), Duke of Friuli from 774 to 776.	Wormaciā: Worms; singular feminine nominative from Wormacia, Wormaciae
id: it (the castle); singular neuter accusative from is, ea, id	
īgnōscē: forgive!; 2nd person singular present active imperative from ignōscō, ignōscere, ignōvī, ignōtus	
in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)	
interfēcīt: he killed; 3rd person singular perfect active from interficiō, interficere, interfēcī, interfēctus	
invēnīt: he found; 3rd person singular present active from inveniō, invenīre, invēnī, inventus	
istōs: those; plural masculine accusative from iste, ista, istud	
Italiā: Italy; singular feminine ablative from Italia, Italiae	
Italiām: Italy (accusative case)	
iuga: mountain peaks; plural neuter accusative from jugum, jugī	
iussit: he commanded; 3rd person singular perfect from iubēō, iubēre, iussī, iussus	
Lyppia: of the Lippe, a river in modern-day Rhine-Westphalia, Germany	
māgnām: large; singular feminine accusative from māgnus, māgna -um, major -or -us, maximus -a -um	
multī: many; plural masculine nominative from multus, multa -um, -a, plūrimus -a -um	
nōmine: name; singular neuter ablative from nōmen, nōminis	
nōn: not	
nostra: our; singular feminine nominative from noster, nostra, nostrum	
potuērunt: they were able to; 3rd person plural perfect active from possum, posse, potuī, -	
procerūm: of noblemen; plural masculine genitive from procer, proceris	
pugnābāt: they were fighting; 3rd person plural imperfect active from pugnō, pugnāre, pugnāvī, pugnātus	
pugnābat: he was fighting; 3rd person singular imperfect active from pugnō, pugnāre, pugnāvī, pugnātus	

Carolus vēnit ad Noviomagum et celebrāvit ibi sollempnia Paschae. Tunc convocāvit cōsilium generāle in urbe nōmine Pathalbrunnōn. Omnes procerēs adfuērunt, sed ūnus, nōmine Widokindus, fēcerat scelerum et fūgerat ad Sīfrīdum, quī erat rēx Dānōrum. Quoque in urbe erant multī hominēs quī dīcēbant "Volumus crēdere Chrīstō" et suscēpērunt baptismum.

Tunc Sarrācēnūs quīdam pervēnerat illūc, nōmine Ībinalārbī. Ībinalārbī erat dux in Hispāniā, sed metuit rēx Sarrācēnūs. Ergō Ibinalarbī volēbat sē subdere Carolō et dare urbēs suās Carolō.

Itaque Carolus dūxit agmina per iuga Pyrenēi. Vēnit in rēgnū Navarrōrum et accēpit urbēs et obsidēs. Carolus dēiēcerat mūrōs urbīs, nōmine Pompelōnem, ad terram, nē fieret¹ rebellīs. Sed virī in urbe erant valdē īrātī. Itaque sē occultābant in iuga Pyrenēi. Quandō exercitus Carolī trānsībat per saltūs, subitō virī pugnābant contrā Francōs, necāvērunt multōs hominēs, cēpērunt praedam, et fugāvērunt iterum in montēs.

Quoque in orientālī, Saxonēs iterum pugnābant contrā Francōs et necāverunt multōs virōs, fēminās, et līberōs, et trādiderunt ecclēsiās flammīs. Carolus revertit ab Hispāniā, iit ad terrās Saxonum, et necāvit tōtam exercitū Saxonum.

¹So that rebellion might not occur.

ab: from, out of, by, since
 accépit: he received, he grasped; 3rd person singular perfect active from accipiō, accipere, accépi, acceptus
 ad: to, towards, at, according to
 adfuérunt: they were present; 3rd person plural perfect active from adsum, adesse, adfui, adfuturus
 agmina: marching armies; plural neuter accusative from agmen, agminis
 annō: year; singular masculine ablative from annus, annī
 baptis̄m: baptism; singular neuter accusative from baptis̄m, baptisi
 Caroli: of Charlemagne, AD 748-814, King of the Franks and Emperor of the Western Roman Empire, member of the Carolingian Dynasty
 Carolō: to Charlemagne, AD 748-814, King of the Franks and Emperor of the Western Roman Empire, member of the Carolingian Dynasty
 Carolus: Charlemagne, AD 748-814, King of the Franks and Emperor of the Western Roman Empire, member of the Carolingian Dynasty
 celebrāvit: he celebrated; 3rd person singular perfect active from celebrō, celebrare, celebrāvī, celebrātus
 cēpērunt: they took; 3rd person plural perfect active from capiō, capere, cēpi, captus
 Christō: Christ
 cōnsilium: plan, advice, council; singular neuter accusative from cōsiliū, cōsili(i)
 contrā: against, away from, facing
 convocāvit: he called together, assembled; 3rd person singular perfect active from convocō, convocāre, convocāvī, convocātus
 crēdere: to believe; present active infinitive from crēdō, crēdere, crēdidi, crēditus
 Dānōrum: Dane; plural masculine genitive from Dānus, Dānī
 dare: to give; present active infinitive from dō, dare, dedi, datus
 dēiēcerat: he had thrown down, overthrew; 3rd person singular pluperfect active from deicio, deicere, dejeci, dejectus
 dicēbant: they were saying; 3rd person plural imperfect active from dico, dicere, dixi, dictus
 dux: leader; singular masculine nominative from dux, ducis
 dūxit: he lead; 3rd person singular perfect from dūcō, dūcere, dūxi, ductus
 ecclēsiās: churches; plural feminine accusative from ecclēsia, ecclēsiae
 erant: they were; 3rd person plural imperfect active from sum, esse, fūi, futūrus
 erat: he was; 3rd person singular imperfect active from sum, esse, fūi, futūrus
 ergō: therefore
 et: and
 exercitū: army; singular masculine accusative from exercitus, exercitūs
 exercitus: army; singular masculine nominative from exercitus, exercitūs
 fēcerat: he had done; 3rd person singular pluperfect active from faciō, facere, fēci, factus
 fēminās: women, wives; pl. f. acc. from fēmina, fēminae
 fieret: it happened; 3rd person singular imperfect active subjunctive from fiō, fieri, factus sum
 flammis: flames; plural feminine ablative from flamma, flammæ
 Francōs: the Franks
 fugāvērunt: they routed, chased away; 3rd person plural perfect active from fugō, fugāre, fugāvī, fugātus
 fūgerat: he fled; 3rd person singular pluperfect active from fugiō, fugere, fūgi, fugitus
 generāle: general; singular neuter accusative from generālis, generālis, generāle
 Hispaniā: Hispania; singular feminine ablative from Hispaniā, Hispaniæ
 hominēs: persons; plural masculine nominative from homō, hominis
 ibī: there, then
 Ibinalarbi: Sulayman ibn Yaqzan al-Kalbi al-Arabi, a muslim governor of Barcelona and Girona
 illūc: over there
 in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
 irāti: angry; plural masculine nominative from irātus -a -um
 itaque: so then, therefore
 iterum: again
 iuga: mountain peaks; plural neuter accusative from iugum, iugī
 iit: he went; 3rd person singular perfect active from eō, ire, iī, itus (irregular)
 liberōs: children; plural masculine accusative from liber, liberi
 metuit: he feared; 3rd person singular present active from metuō, metuere, metuī, metūtus
 montēs: mountains; plural masculine accusative from mōns, montis
 multi: many; plural masculine nominative from multus, multa -um, -, plūrimus -a -um
 multōs: many; plural masculine accusative from multus, multa -um, -, plūrimus -a -um
 mūrōs: city walls; plural masculine accusative from mūrus, mūrī
 Navarrōrum: of the Kingdom of Navarre, a Basque kingdom
 nē: not
 necāvērunt: they killed, destroyed; 3rd person plural perfect active from necō, necāre, necāvī, necātus
 necāvit: he killed, destroyed; 3rd person singular perfect active from necō, necāre, necāvī, necātus
 nōmīne: name; singular neuter ablative from nōmen, nōminis
 Nōviomāgū: city of the Treveri, now Nijmegen, city in Holland; singular feminine accusative from Nōviomāgū, Nōviomāgī
 obsidēs: hostages; plural masculinei accusative obses, obsidis
 occultābant: they were hiding; 3rd person plural imperfect active from occultō, occultāre, occultāvī, occultātus
 omnēs: all, every; plural common nominative from omnis, omnis, omne
 orientālē: eastern; singular ablative from orientālis, orientālis, orientālē
 Paschae: Passover, Easter; singular feminine genitive from Pascha, Paschae
 Pāthalbrunnon: Aachen, a city in modern-day North Rhine-Westphalia
 per: through
 pervēnerat: he had arrived; 3rd person singular pluperfect active from perveniō, pervenire, pervēni, perventus
 Pompēlonem: Pamplona, a Spanish city
 praēdam: plunder; singular feminine accusative from praeda, praedae
 procerēs: noblemen; plural masculine nominative from procer, proceris
 pugnābant: they were fighting; 3rd person plural imperfect active from pugnō, pugnāre, pugnāvī, pugnātus
 Pyrēneī: of the Pyrene mountains
 quandō: when, because
 quī: who; plural masculine nominative of quis
 quīdām: certain; singular masculine nominative from quīdam
 quoque: also
 rebellis: rebellion; singular common nominative from rebellis, rebellis, rebelle
 rēgnūm: kingdom; singular neuter accusative from rēgnūm, rēgnī
 revertīt: he returned; 3rd person singular present active from revertō, revertere, revertī, reversus
 rēx: king; singular masculine nominative from rēx, rēgis
 saltūs: narrow passes, mountain defiles; plural masculine accusative from saltus, saltūs
 Sarrācēnūs: a muslim
 Saxonēs: the Saxons
 Saxōnūm: of the Saxons
 scelerūm: of crimes; plural neuter genitive from scelus, sceleris
 se: himself
 sed: but
 Sifridūm: Sifridus, king of the Danes
 sollempnia: solemnities; plural neuter accusative from sollempnis, sollempne, sollempnior -or -us, sollempnissimus -a -um
 suās: his; plural accusative feminine of suus
 subdere: to place under; present active infinitive from subdō, subdere, subdī, subditus
 subitō: suddenly
 suscēpērunt: they undertook; 3rd person plural perfect from suscipiō, suscipere, suscēpi, susceptus
 terrām: land; singular feminine accusative from terra, terrae
 terrās: lands; plural feminine accusative from terra, terrae
 tōtam: whole, total; singular feminine accusative from tōtus, tōta, tōtum (gen.-ius)
 trādidiērunt: they had handed over; 3rd person plural perfect active from trādō, trādere, trādidi, trāditus
 trānsibat: he was going over, he was crossing; 3rd person singular imperfect active from trānseō, trānsire, trānsī, trānsitus
 tunc: then
 ūnūs: one
 urbe: city; singular feminine ablative from urbs, urbis
 urbēs: cities; plural feminine accusative from urbs, urbis
 urbis: city; singular feminine genitive from urbs, urbis
 valdē: very
 vēnīt: he came; 3rd person singular present active from veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventus
 virī: man; plural neuter nominative from virus, viri
 virōs: men; plural masculine accusative from vir, viri
 volēbat: he was wanting; 3rd person singular imperfect active from volō, velle, voluī, -
 volumus: we want; 1st person plural present active from volō, velle, voluī, -
 Widokindus: a Saxon, likely a senator, who fled from Charlemagne, seeking refuge in the court of Sifridus

Annō 779

Dux Spōlētānus, nōmine Hildibrandus, iit ad Carolum et dedit Carolō multa dōna.

Carolus iterum pugnābat contrā Saxonēs. Saxonēs pugnābant prope Rhēnum, sed nōn potuērunt vincere exercitum Carolī.

Annō 780

Carolus vēnit ad flūmen Ovaccrum, et ibi invēnit magnam turbam Saxonum quī voluērunt crēdere Chrīstō. Et multī hominēs Saxonum suscēpērunt baptismam.

Posteā, Carolus iit ad Rōmam et ūrāvit. Pervēnit ad Ticinēnsem, et ibi celebrāvit Nātālem Dominī.

ad: to, towards, at, according to
 anno: year; singular masculine ablative from *annus*, *annī*
 Caroli: of Charlemagne, AD 748-814, King of the Franks and
 Emperor of the Western Roman Empire, member of the
 Carolingian Dynasty (genitive case)
 Carolō: to Charlemagne, AD 748-814, King of the Franks and
 Emperor of the Western Roman Empire, member of the
 Carolingian Dynasty (dative case)
 Carolum: Charlemagne, AD 748-814, King of the Franks and
 Emperor of the Western Roman Empire, member of the
 Carolingian Dynasty (accusative case)
 Carolus: Charlemagne, AD 748-814, King of the Franks and
 Emperor of the Western Roman Empire, member of the
 Carolingian Dynasty (nominative case)
 celebrāvit: he celebrated; 3rd person singular perfect active
 from *celebrō*, *celebrāre*, *celebrāvī*, *celebrātus*
 Christō: Christ
 contrā: against, away from, facing
 crēdere: to believe; present active infinitive from *crēdō*,
 crēdere, *crēdidi*, *crēditus*
 dedit: he gave; 3rd person singular perfect active from *dō*, dare,
 didi, *datus*
 Domīni: of the Lord; singular masculine genitive from *dominus*,
 domīni
 dōna: gifts; plural neuter accusative from *dōnum*, *dōnī*
 dux: leader; singular masculine nominative from *dux*, *ducis*
 et: and
 exercitū: army; singular masculine accusative from *exercitus*,
 exercitūs
 flūmen: river; singular neuter accusative from *flūmen*, *flūminis*
 Hildibrandus: Hildeprand, Duke of Spoleto from 774 to 789
 hominēs: persons; plural masculine nominative from *homō*,
 hominis
 ibī: there, then
 invēnit: he found; 3rd person singular perfect active from
 invenio, *invenire*, *inveni*, *inventus*
 iterum: again
 iit: he went; 3rd person singular perfect active from *eō*, *īre*, *īi*,
 itus (irregular)
 māgnam: large; singular feminine accusative from *māgnus*,
 māgna -um, major -or -us, maximus -a -um
 multa: many; plural neuter accusative from *multus*, *multa* -um,
 -, *plūrimus* -a -um
 multī: many; plural masculine nominative from *multus*, *multa*
 -um, -, *plūrimus* -a -um
 Nātālem: Nātālem Domīni = Christmas; singular common
 accusative from *natalis*, *natalis*, *natale*
 nōmine: name; singular neuter ablative from *nōmen*, *nōminis*
 nōn: not
 ōrāvit: he prayed; 3rd person singular perfect active from *ōrō*,
 ōrāre, *ōrāvi*, *ōrātus*
 Ovaccrum: probably the Oker River, a tributary of the River
 Aller, in Lower Saxony
 pervēnit: he arrived; 3rd person singular perfect active from
 perveniō, *pervenire*, *pervēnī*, *perventus*
 posteā: thereafter, later
 potuērunt: they were able to; 3rd person plural perfect active
 from *possum*, *posse*, *potuī*, -
 prope: near, close
 pugnābant: they were fighting; 3rd person plural imperfect
 active from *pugnō*, *pugnāre*, *pugnāvī*, *pugnātus*
 pugnābat: he was fighting; 3rd person singular imperfect active
 from *pugnō*, *pugnāre*, *pugnāvī*, *pugnātus*
 quī: who; plural masculine nominative of *quis*
 Rhēnum: the Rhine; singular masculine accusative from *Rhēnus*,
 Rhēnī
 Rōmam: Rome; singular feminine accusative from *Rōma*, *Rōmae*
 Saxonēs: the Saxons
 Saxōnum: of the Saxons
 sed: but
 Spōlētānus: of the Duchy of Spoleto, located in the region of
 Umbria, Italy
 suscēpērunt: they undertook; 3rd person plural perfect active
 from *suscipiō*, *suscipere*, *suscepī*, *susceptus*
 Ticinēnsem: Ticino, one of the cantons (regions) of Switzerland
 turbam: crowd; singular feminine accusative from *turba*, *turbae*
 vēnit: he came; 3rd person singular perfect active from *veniō*,
 venire, *vēni*, *ventus*
 vincere: to conquer; present active infinitive from *vincō*,
 vincere, *vici*, *victus*
 voluērunt: they wanted; 3rd person plural perfect active from
 volō, *velle*, *voluī*, -

Versiō Originālis

Salvātor mundī, postquam dē Virgine nāscī¹
Dignātus, nostrī sē corporis induit artūs,
Ēvolvit septingentōs rota temporis annōs
Et deciēs septem, sed et ūnus pēne² perāctus
Īnsuper annus erat, cum iūre monarchia rēgnī
Francōrum Carolō dīvīnitus³ est data Magnō.
Nam Carolōmannus frāter dēcesserat⁴ eius
Presentis iam suprēmīs prope partibus anni.

¹*The Savior of the world, after having deigned to be born of the Virgin, dressed himself in the bodily nature of our flesh; the wheel of time turned 700 years.* This refers to Jesus Christ being born of the Virgin Mary. *Dignātus* is an active participle because it comes from the deponent verb *dīgnor*. This first phrase acts as a nominative absolute, a construction found in Medieval Latin that is similar to an ablative absolute. The wheel of time is a poetic construction used to convey the passing of time since the Incarnation; see next footnote.

²*And ten time seven, and one year almost carried out.* The date thus given is, using a date of 1 AD for the birth of Christ, late 771 AD.

³*Furthermore, it was the year when, by divine right, the monarchy of the kingdom of the Franks was given to Charles the Great.* An English-like order might be *cum, dīvīnitus iūre, monarchia rēgnī Francōrum data est Carolō Magnō.* *dīvīnitus* is an adverb, so it would be literally *by right divinely*. I chose to capitalize *Magnō* since it is a common epithet for Charlemagne.

⁴*For Carloman his brother had died now, near the late parts of the present year.* Carloman died on December 4, 771.

annī: year; singular masculine genitive from *annus*, annī
annōs: years; plural masculine accusative from *annus*, annī
annus: year; singular masculine nominative from *annus*, annī
artūs: bodily nature (in context), sinews, limbs, strengths; plural
masculine accusative from *artus*, artūs
Carolō: Charlemagne, AD 748-814, King of the Franks and
Emperor of the Western Roman Empire, member of the
Carolingian Dynasty (dative case)
Carolōmannus: Carloman, son of Pepin the Short and co-ruler of
the Frankish kingdom with Charlemagne
corporis: body, flesh; singular neuter genitive from *corpus*,
corporis
cum: when
data: data est = was given; singular feminine nominative
perfect passive participle from dō, dare, dedī, datus
dē: of, from, away from, down from
dēcesserat: he had died; 3rd person singular pluperfect active
from dēcēdō, dēcēdere, dēcessi, dēcessus
deciēs: ten times
dignatus: dignatus est = he had deemed worthy, deigned, the
est is omitted for metrical reasons; singular masculine
nominative active perfect passive participle from *dignor*,
dignāri, dignātus
divinitus: divinely, of heaven (adverb)
eius: his/her/its
erat: he was; 3rd person singular imperfect active from sum,
esse, fui, futūrus
est: he is; 3rd person singular present active from sum, esse,
fui, futūrus
et: and
ēvolvit: it rolled out, unrolled; 3rd person singular present
active from ēvolvō, ēvolvere, ēvolvī, ēvolvūtus
Francōrum: of the Franks
frāter: brother; singular masculine nominative from *frāter*,
frātris
iam: already, now, soon
induit: he dressed; 3rd person singular perfect active from
induō, induere, induī, indūtus
īnsuper: besides, furthermore
iūre: by right; singular neuter ablative from iūs, iūris
Māgnō: great; singular masculine dative from māgnus, māgna
-um, major -or -us, maximus -a -um
monarchia: monarchy; singular feminine nominative from
monarchia, monarchiae
mundi: world; singular masculine genitive from *mundus*, mundī
nam: yes, truly
nāsci: to be born; present passive infinitive
nostri: our; singular neuter genitive of *noster*
partibus: parts; plural feminine ablative from *pars*, partis
pēne: almost; alternate spelling of *paene*
perāctus: perāctus erat = had been carried out; singular
masculine nominative perfect passive participle from
peragō, peragere, peregī, peractus
postquam: after
presentis: present, at-hand, currently-mentioned; singular
masculine genitive variant spelling from *praesēns*
prope: near, close
rēgnī: of the kingdom; singular neuter genitive from *rēgnum*,
rēgnī
rota: wheel; singular feminine nominative from *rota*, rotae
salvātor: savior; singular masculine nominative from *salvātor*,
salvātōris
sē: himself
sed: but
septem: seven
septingentōs: 700
suprēmis: furthest, latest; plural ablative from superus, supera
-um, superior -or -us, suprēmus -a -um
temporis: of time, of periods; singular neuter genitive from
tempus, temporis
ūnus: one
virgine: virgin; singular feminine ablative from *virgō*, virginis

Et Carolus vīllam, quae Carbōnāta vocātur,
Adveniēns, summōs procerēs omnēsque potentēs
Frāternae quondam¹ partīs suscēperat illīc,
Haud retractantēs² dominō sē subdere tālī;
Exceptīs tantum paucīs, quōs³ forte priōris
Magnus amor dominī cum coniuge fēcerat eius
Et nātīs remanēre, quibus comitāta petīvit
Ītaliā, spērāns sē dēgere posse quiētam
Sub rēgis Dēsideriī mūnīmine vītam.

¹And Charlemagne, coming to the villa called Carbōnāta, had received there all the noblemen and powerful (men) formerly of his brother's party. After Carloman died, Charlemagne met with Carloman's nobles to bring them to his side; however, a few with Carloman's wife and daughters fled to Italy under King Desiderius, the final Lombard King.

²For metrical reasons, the first syllable of *retractantēs* must be long.

³Except only a few, to whom perchance a great love of their prior lord had made them to remain with his wife and children, she (Carloman's wife) accompanied with them sought Italy. *comitāta* must be in the nominative; putting it in the ablative would result in the loss of the dactyl necessary for the meter.

adveniēns: arriving; singular nominative present participle from
 adveniō, adveniēre, advēni, adventus
 amor: love; 1st person singular present passive from amō,
 amāre, amāvī, amātus
 at: and
 Carolus: Charlemagne, AD 748-814, King of the Franks and
 Emperor of the Western Roman Empire, member of the
 Carolingian Dynasty
 comitāta: accompanied, guarded, attended; singular feminine
 nominative from comitātus -a -um
 coniuge: spouse; singular common ablative from conjunx,
 conjūgīs
 cum: with
 dēgēre: to spend, carry on; present active infinitive from dēgō,
 dēgēre, dēgī, -
 Dēsideriū: Desiderius, final King of the Lombards (720-786)
 dominī: of (their) lord; singular masculine genitive from
 domīnus, domīni
 dominō: (from their) lord; singular masculine ablative from
 domīnus, domīni
 eius: his/her/its
 et: and
 exceptūs: having been excepted; plural ablative perfect passive
 participle from excipiō, excipere, excēpī, exceptus
 fēcerat: it had made; 3rd person singular pluperfect active from
 faciō, facere, fēcī, factus
 forte: by chance
 fraternae: fraternal; singular feminine genitive from frāternus,
 frāterna, frāternum
 haud: not, not at all
 illīc: there
 Italiām: Italy (accusative case)
 māgnus: large; singular masculine nominative from māgnus,
 māgna -um, major -or -us, maximus -a -um
 mūnīmīne: defence, fortification, rampart; singular neuter
 ablative from mūnīmen, mūnīminis
 nātīs: children; plural ablative from nātus, nātī (son) or nāta,
 nātāe (daughter)
 omnēs: all, every; plural common accusative from omnis, omnis,
 omne
 partis: party, faction, part; singular feminine genitive from pars,
 partis
 paucīs: few, little; plural masculine ablative from paucus, pauci
 petīvī: she sought; 3rd person singular perfect active from
 petō, petere, petīvī, petitus
 posse: to be able; present active infinitive from possum, posse,
 potuī, -
 potentēs: mighty (men); plural common accusative from potēns,
 potentīs (gen.), potentīor -or -us, potentissimus -a -um
 priōris: previous; singular masculine genitive from prior, prior,
 prius
 procerēs: noblemen; plural masculine accusative from procer,
 proceris
 quae: who; singular female nominative of quis
 quibūs: with whom; plural ablative of qui
 quiētam: quiet; singular feminine accusative from quiētus -am
 -um
 quondam: formerly
 quōs: whom; plural masculine accusative of quis
 rēgīs: of the king; singular masculine genitive from rēx, rēgis
 remanēre: to remain; present active infinitive from remaneō,
 remanēre, remānsi, remānsus
 retractantēs: withdrawing; plural common accusative present
 participle from retractō, retractāre, retractāvī, retractātus
 sē: themselves
 spērāns: hoping; singular nominative present participle from
 spērō, spērāre, spērāvī, spērātus
 sub: below, under
 subdēre: to place under; present active infinitive from subdō,
 subdere, subdīdī, subditus
 summōs: highest, greatest; plural masculine accusative from
 summus, summa, sumnum
 suscēperat: he received; 3rd person singular pluperfect active
 from suscipiō, suscipere, suscēpī, susceptus
 tālī: such
 tantum: so much, so great, this many; singular neuter
 nominative from tantus, tanta, tantum
 vīllām: villa; singular feminine accusative from vīlla, vīllae
 vītam: life; singular feminine accusative from vīta, vītae
 vocātūr: it is called; 3rd person singular present passive from
 vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātus

Rēx autem Carolus celebrāvit in Attiniācō
Nātālem Domini, nec nōn Paschālia fēsta.
Paulō¹ Rōmānē dēfūnctō praeſule sēdis,
Suscēpit post hunc Adriānus pontificātum.
Et rēx Wormatiā Carolus collēgit in urbem
Francōrum procerēs ad concilium generāle;
Cum quibus ut bellō Saxonēs aggredētur²

Dēcrēvit; quoniam Saxōnum proxima Francīs
Adiacet ad boream tellūs, vix līmite certō
Dīvīsī gentis finēs³ utriusque cohaerent.
Que⁴ tum vīcīnae quō plūs regiōne fuēre,
Tantō sēiūnctās animīs discordia fēcit.
Finitimōs sed enim per agrōs utrimque solēbant⁵
Assiduē fierī cēdēs, incendia, praede.
Saxonum nātūra ferōx et pectora dūra,
Ferre iugum Chrīstī necdum dīgnāta⁶ suāve,
Dēmonicō nimium fuerant errōre subācta.

¹*Paul the Roman president of the seat (i.e. the Pope) having died, Adrian after him undertook the pontificate.* Pope Paul I was Pope from May 29th 757 to June 28th 767, then Pope Stephen III (who isn't mentioned in this line) was Pope from August 7th 768 to January 24th 772, then Pope Adrian I was Pope from February 1st 772 to December 25th 795. Mommsen includes the following footnote on *Paulō: immo Stephano IV*; by this Mommsen is referring to Pope Stephen III, since when Mommsen wrote his work Pope-elect Stephen (died March 25th 752 before taking Papal office) was considered an official Pope, but after 1961 was no longer deemed to have been a Pope, leading to a disparity in the numbering of Stephens.

²*With whom he decided they would attack the Saxons in war.*

³*With barely a certain border the divided boundaries of either people stood closely together.*

⁴*And thereupon when the neighbors went further out of the region, discord made their souls to be so separated.*
The proximity of the peoples led to conflict.

⁵*And both sides were accustomed to slaughter, fire, and prey to constantly occur through the neighboring fields.*

⁶*Nor had they (the Saxons) deigned to bear the gentle yoke of Christ, but had been subjugated too much in demonic error.* This is reminiscent of Matthew 11:30 "My yoke is easy and my burden is light".

ad: to, towards, at, according to	nātūrae
Adriānus: Pope Adrian I, who was Pope from February 1st 772 to December 25th 795	necdum: but not yet
adiacet: it lies next to; 3rd person singular present active from adiacēō, adiacēre, adiacū	nimium: too much, superabundance; singular neuter nominative from nimius, nimia, nimium
aggrederētur: they were attacking; 3rd person singular imperfect passive subjunctive from aggredior, aggredi, aggressus	nōn: not
agrōs: fields; plural masculine accusative from ager, agrī	Paschālia: Paschal, Paschālia fēsta = Paschal (Easter) feasts; plural neuter nominative from paschālis, paschālis, paschāle
animis: souls, minds, lives; plural feminine ablative from anima, animae	Paulō: Pope Paul I; Pope from May 29th 757 to June 28th 767 (ablative case)
assiduē: permanently	pectorā: chests; plural neuter nominative from pectus, pectoris
Attiniācō: likely Attigny in the Ardennes department of modern-day France	per: through
autem: but, however, moreover	plūs: more, from mūltus
bellō: battle, war; singular neuter ablative from bellum, bellī	pontificātū: pontificate; singular masculine accusative from pontificātus, pontificātus
boream: the north; singular masculine accusative from Boreās, Boreae	post: behind, after, since
Carolus: Charlemagne, AD 748-814, King of the Franks and Emperor of the Western Roman Empire, member of the Carolingian Dynasty	praede: plunder, prey; plural feminine nominative variant spelling from praeda, praedae
cēdēs: slaughter; plural masculine accusative alternative spelling from caedēs, caedis	praesule: president; singular common ablative from praesul, praesulis
celebrāvit: he celebrated; 3rd person singular perfect active from celebrō, celebrāre, celebrāvī, celebrātus	procerēs: noblemen; plural masculine accusative from procer, proceris
certō: certain; singular masculine ablative from certus, certa, certum	proxima: next, nearest; singular feminine nominative from proximus, proxima, proximum
Christi: Christ; singular masculine genitive from Christus, Christī	que: and
cohaerēt: they stand together; 3rd person plural present active from cohaereo, cohaerēre, cohaesi, cohaesus	quibus: what; plural dative or ablative of qui
collēgit: he assembled, he collected; 3rd person singular perfect active from colligō, colligere, collēgi, collēctus	quō: what; singular ablative of quis
concilium: council, assembly; singular neuter accusative from concilium, conciliū	quoniam: since, inasmuch now
cum: with	regiōne: region; singular feminine after from regiō, regiōnis
dēcrēvit: he decided; 3rd person singular perfect active from dēcēnō, dēcernere, dēcrēvī, dēcrētus	rēx: king; singular masculine nominative from rēx, rēgis
dēfunctō: dead; singular masculine ablative perfect participle from defungor, defungi, defunctus sum	Rōmāne: of the Romans; singular feminine genitive variant spelling of Rōmānae
Dēmonicō: with the demonic; singular masculine ablative variant spelling from daemonicus -a -um	Saxoniēs: the Saxons
dīgnāta: having deemed worthy; plural neuter nominative perfect passive participle from dignor, dīgnārī, dīgnātus	Saxōnum: of the Saxons
discordia: discord, disagreement; singular feminine nominative from discordia, discordiae	sed: but
dīvīsi: having been divided; plural masculine nominative from dīvidō, dīvidere, dīvīsi, dīvīsus	sēdīs: seat, in context the Papal Seat; singular feminine genitive from sēdēs, sēdīs
domini: of the lord; singular masculine genitive from dominus, dominī	sēiūnctās: having been separated, excluded; plural feminine accusative perfect passive participle from sēiungō, sēiungere, sēiūnxī, sēiūnctus
dum: while, as long as, until	solēbat: they were accustomed to; 3rd person plural imperfect active from soleō, solēre, solitus sum
dūra: hard; plural neuter nominative from dūrus, dūra -um, dūrīor -or -us, dūrissimus -a -um	suāve: sweet; singular neuter accusative from suāvis, suāve, suāvior -or -us, suāvissimus -a -um
enim: for, truly, really, indeed	subācta: having been subjugated, conquered; singular feminine nominative perfect passive participle from subigō, subigere, subēgī, subāctus
errōre: error, wandering, deception; singular masculine ablative from error, errōris	suscēpit: he undertook, he received; 3rd person singular perfect active from suscipiō, suscipere, suscēpī, susceptus
et: and	tantō: so much, so great, this many; singular masculine dative from tantus, tanta, tantum
fēcit: it made; 3rd person singular perfect active from faciō, facere, fēcī, factus	tellūs: earth, territory; singular feminine nominative from tellūs, tellūris
ferōx: wild, bold, defiant; singular feminine nominative from ferōx, (gen.), ferōcīs	tum: then
ferre: to bear; present active infinitive from ferō, ferre, tuli, lātūs	urbēm: city; singular feminine accusative from urbs, urbis
fēsta: festivals; plural neuter accusative from fēstum, fēstī	ut: so that
fieri: to happen, to occur; present infinitive from fiō, fierī, factus sum	utrimque: both sides
finēs: boundaries, ends, limits; plural masculine nominative from finis, finis	utrius: either; singular genitive from uter, utra, utrum
finitimōs: neighbors; plural masculine accusative from finitimus, finitimī	vīcīnae: neighbors; plural feminine nominataive from vicinus, vīcīna, vīcīnum
Francis: the Franks	vīx: barely
Francōrum: of the Franks	Wormatīam: Worms, Germany
fuerant: they had been; 3rd person plural pluperfect active from sum, esse, fūi, futūrus	
fuēre: they were, alternative spelling of fuērunt; 3rd person plural perfect active from sum, esse, fūi, futūrus	
generāle: general; singular neuter accusative from generālis, generālis, generāle	
gentis: of the people, clan, nation; singular feminine genitive from gēns, gentis	
hunc: this; singular masculine accusative of hic, haec, hoc	
in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)	
incendia: fires; plural neuter nominative from incendium, incendiī	
iugum: yoke; singular neuter nominative from iugum, iugī	
limite: limit; singular masculine ablative from limes, limitis	
nātālem: birthday, Nātālem Domīnī = Christmas; singular common accusative from natalis, natalis, natale	
nātūra: nature; singular feminine nominative from nātūra,	

Chrīsticolae¹ vērō iam longō tempore Francī
Catholicam tenuēre fidem, multīsque per orbem
Iam dominābantur populīs, quibus undique fultī,
Precipuē virtūte Deī, quem rīte colēbant,
Hanc ūnam poterant nīmīrum vincere gentem.
Que nec rēge fuit saltem² sociāta sub ūnō,
Ut sē militiae pariter dēfenderet ūsū,
Sed variīs dīvīsa modīs plēbs omnis, habēbat
Quot³ pāgōs tot paene ducēs, velut ūnius artūs
Corporis in dīversa forent hinc inde revulsī.
Sed generālis habet populōs dīvīsio ternōs,
Īsignīta⁴ quibus Saxōnia flōruit ūlim.

Nōmina nunc remanent⁵, virtūs antīqua recessit:

¹*The Frankish Christ-worshippers, now for a long time, held the Catholic faith, and now were dominating many peoples throughout the world, whom (i.e. the Christians) were upheld on all sides, especially by the power of God, whom they worshipped with due observances, certainly was able to conquer this one people (the Saxons).* Note that the Poet here expresses a positive view of the relationship between rightly worshipping God and gaining political power.

²*And they were not, anyhow, associated under one king, that their militaries might defend themselves together in time of need.*

³*They had almost as many districts as dukes, as if the limbs of one body were wrenched away from here and from there.* Here the Poet remarks that the Saxons lack of political unification left them weak. *forent* is in the subjunctive to express the hypothetical or illustrative nature of this clause.

⁴*But generally the division has three peoples, by which the distinguished Saxons flourished once upon a time.* The three divisions of the Saxons mentioned are Westphalia, Engria, and Eastphalia, see the next page.

⁵*The names now remain, but the ancient virtue departed.* This is an excellent line.

antiqua: ancient; singular feminine nominative from *antiquus*,
 antiqua-um, *antiquior* -or -us, *antiquissimus* -a -um
 artūs: joints, limbs; plural masculine nominative from *artus*,
 artus
 catholicam: Catholic; singular feminine accusative from
 catholicus, *catholica*, *catholicum*
 Christicola: Christian, worshiper of Christ; plural masculine
 nominative from *Christicola*, *Christicola*
 colēbant: they were worshiping; 3rd person plural imperfect
 active from *colō*, *colere*, *colū*, *cultus*
 corporis: body, flesh; singular neuter genitive from *corpus*,
 corporis
 dēfenderet: they might defend; 3rd person singular imperfect
 active subjunctive from *dēfendō*, *dēfendere*, *dēfendī*,
 dēfēnsus
 Deī: god, diety; singular masculine genitive from *Deus*, *Dei*
 dīversa: diverse; singular feminine nominative from *dīversus*,
 diversa, *diversum*
 dīvisa: having been divided; singular feminine nominative
 perfect passive participle from *dividō*, *dividere*, *dīvisi*,
 dīvisus
 dīvisio: division; singular feminine nominative from *dīvisiō*,
 dīvisiōnis. Typically there is a macron over the o but here it
 has to be a short syllable for metrical reasons.
 dominābantur: they ruled; 3rd person plural imperfect active
 from *dominor*, *domināri*, *dominātus*. The verb being the
 deponent *domināri* and not *domināre* is clear from context.
 domināri uses the dative instead of the accusative.
 ducēs: leaders; plural masculine accusative from *dux*, *ducis*
 fidēm: faith; singular feminine accusative from *fidēs*, *fidei*
 flōrūit: it blossomed, flourished; 3rd person singular perfect
 active from *flōrēō*, *flōrēre*, *flōrūi*, -
 forent: they were; 3rd person plural imperfect active
 subjunctive from *sum*, *esse*, *fuī*, *futūrus*
 Franci: the Franks
 fuit: he was; 3rd person singular perfect active from *sum*, *esse*,
 fuī, *futūrus*
 fultī: having been supported; singular masculine genitive
 perfect passive participle from *fulciō*, *fulcīre*, *fulsī*, *fultus*
 generālis: general; singular common nominative from *generālis*,
 generālis, *generāle*
 gentēm: people, clan, nation; singular feminine accusative from
 gēns, *gentis*
 habēbat: he had; 3rd person singular imperfect active from
 habeo, *habēre*, *habuī*, *habitus*
 habet: he has; 3rd person singular present active from *habeo*,
 habēre, *habuī*, *habitus*
 hanc: this; singular feminine accusative of *hic*, *haec*, *hoc*
 hinc: from here
 iam: now, presently
 in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
 inde: from there
 insignita: having been marked, distinguished; singular feminine
 nominative perfect passive participle from *īnsigniō*,
 īsignīre, *īsignīvī*, *īsignītūs*
 longō: long; singular masculine ablative from *longus*, *longa* -um,
 longior -or -us, *longissimus* -a -um
 militiae: of the military; singular feminine genitive from *militia*,
 militiae
 modis: ways; plural masculine ablative from *modus*, *modi*
 multis: many; plural dative from *multus*, *multa* -um, -, *plūrimus*
 -a -um
 nec: not, not either
 nimirum: certainly
 nōmina: names; plural neuter nominative from *nōmen*, *nōminis*
 nunc: now
 ölim: one day, once upon a time
 omnis: all, every; singular common nominative from *omnis*,
 omnis, *omne*
 orbem: world; singular masculine accusative from *orbis*, *orbis*
 paene: almost
 pāgōs: district, region; plural masculine accusative from *pāgus*,
 pāgī
 pariter: together
 per: through
 plēbs: common people; singular feminine nominative from
 plēbs, *plēbīs*
 populis: people, populace; plural masculine dative from *populus*,
 popūlī
 populōs: peoples, populaces; plural masculine accusative from
 populus, *popūlī*
 poterant: they were able to; 3rd person plural imperfect active
 from *possum*, *posse*, *potuī*, -
 precipiē: especially, chiefly; variant spelling from *praecipiē*
 (adverb)
 que: and
 quem: what, singular masculine accusative of *qui*
 quibus: what; plural dative or ablative of *qui*
 quot: quot ... tot ... = as many as

recessit: it withdrew; 3rd person singular perfect active from
 recēdō, *recēdere*, *recessī*, *recessus*
 rēge: king; singular masculine ablative from *rēx*, *rēgis*
 remānēt: they remain; 3rd person plural present active from
 remaneō, *remanēre*, *remānsi*, *remānsus*
 revulsi: having been torn away; plural masculine nominative
 perfect passive participle from *revellō*, *revellere*, *revellī*,
 revulsus
 rīte: duly, according to religious usage, with due observance;
 solemnly; well; (adverb)
 saltem: anyhow
 Saxonia: Saxony
 sē: himself
 sed: but
 sociāta: *sociāta fuit* = had been allied; singular feminine
 nominative perfect passive participle from *sociō*, *sociāre*,
 sociāvī, *sociātus*
 sub: below, under
 tempore: time, period; singular neuter ablative from *tempus*,
 temporis
 tenuērunt: they held, alternative spelling of *tenuērunt*; 3rd person
 plural perfect active from *teneō*, *tenēre*, *tenuī*, *tentus*
 ternos: three each; plural masculine accusative from *trēs* -es -ia,
 tertius -a -um, *terni* -ae -a, *ter*
 tot: quot ... tot ... = as many as
 ūnam: one; singular feminine accusative from *ūnus* -a -um,
 primus -a -um, *singuli* -ae -a, *semel*
 undique: from all sides
 ūniūs: of one (genitive of *ūnus*)
 ūnō: one; singular masculine ablative from *ūnus* -a -um, *prīmus*
 -a -um, *singuli* -ae -a, *semel*
 ūsū: necessity; singular masculine ablative from *ūsus*, *ūsūs*
 ut: so that
 variīs: various, diverse; plural ablative from *varius*, *varia*,
 varium
 velut: same as, for example
 vērō: indeed, and
 vincere: to conquer; present active infinitive from *vincō*,
 vincere, *vīci*, *victus*
 virtūs: virtue, manliness, power; singular feminine nominative
 from *virtūs*, *virtūtis*
 virtūtē: virtue, manliness, power; singular feminine ablative
 from *virtūs*, *virtūtis*

Dēnique Westfalos vocitant in parte manentēs

Occiduā, quōrum nōn longē terminus amne

Ā Rhēnō distat; regiōnem sōlis ad ortum

Inhabitābant Osterliudī, quōs nōmine quīdam

Ostvalos aliō vocitant, cōfinia² quōrum

Īfestant coniūcta suīs gēns perfida Sclāvī.

Inter praedictōs mediā regiōne morantur

Angariī, populus Saxonum tertius; hōrum

Patria Francōrum terrīs sotiātur ab austrō,

Ōceanōque³ eadem coniungitur ex aquilōne.

¹*Thereupon they call (them) Westphalians in the part remaining to the west, whose border lies not far from the Rhine river.*

²*Whose boundaries the Slavs, a perfidious people joined to them, makes dangerous.*

³*For scansion: elision occurs here, so que + ea becomes one long syllable.*

ā: from, out of, by, since
 ab: from, out of, by, since
 ad: to, towards, at, according to
 aliō: other; singular masculine ablative from *alius*, *alia*, *aliud*
 amne: river; singular masculine ablative from *amnis*, *amnis*
 Angarii: the Angarians, a Saxon tribe
 aquilōne: north; singular masculine ablative from *aquilō*,
 aquilōnis
 austrō: south; singular masculine ablative from *auster*, *austri*
 cōfinia: borders; plural neuter nominative from *confinium*,
 confiniū
 coniuncta: having been joined together; singular feminine
 nominative perfect passive participle from *conjungo*,
 conjungere, *conjunxi*, *conjunctus*
 coniungitur: it is joined together; 3rd person singular present
 passive from *conjungo*, *conjungere*, *conjunxi*, *conjunctus*
 dēnique: thereupon
 distat: it stands apart, it is distant; 3rd person singular present
 active from *distō*, *distāre*, -,-
 eadem: the same, singular feminine nominative or plural
 neutern nominative or ablative
 ex: out of, from
 Francōrum: of the Franks
 gēns: people, clan, nation; singular feminine nominative from
 gēns, *gentis*
 hōrum: these; plural masculine genitive of *hic*, *haec*, *hoc*
 in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
 infestant: they make dangerous, infest; 3rd person plural
 present active from *infestō*, *infestāre*, *infestāvi*, *infestātus*
 inhabitābant: they inhabited; 3rd person plural imperfect active
 from *inhabitō*, *inhabitāre*, *inhabitāvi*, *inhabitātus*
 inter: between, among, during
 longē: afar; (adverb)
 manentēs: remaining; plural common nominative present
 participle from *maneō*, *manēre*, *mānsi*, *mānsus*
 mediā: middle; singular feminine nominative from *medius*,
 media, *medium*
 morantur: they dwell; 3rd person plural present from *moror*,
 morāri, *morātus*
 nōmine: name; singular neuter ablative from *nōmen*, *nōminis*
 nōn: not
 occiduā: westerly; singular feminine ablative from *occiduus*,
 occidua, *occiduum*
 ōceanō: ocean; singular masculine ablative from *Oceanus*,
 Oceani
 ortum: rising; singular masculine accusative from *ortus*, *ortūs*
 Osterliudi: Another name of the Eastphalians
 Ostvalōs: Eastphalians, members of a Saxon tribe
 parte: part; singular feminine ablative from *pars*, *partis*
 patria: fatherland; singular feminine nominative from *patria*,
 patriae
 perfida: treacherous, deceitful; singular feminine nominative
 from *perfidus*, *perfida*, *perfidum*
 populus: people, populace; singular masculine nominative from
 populus, *populi*
 praedictōs: the aforesaid; plural masculine accusative perfect
 passive participle from *praedicō*, *praedicere*, *praedixi*,
 praedictus
 quī: who; plural masculine nominative of *quis*
 quōrum: of whom; plural masc or neut. genitive of *quis*
 quōs: who; plural masculine accusative of *quis*
 regiōne: region; singular feminine ablative from *regiō*, *regiōnis*
 regiōnem: region; singular feminine accusative from *regiō*,
 regiōnis
 Rhēnō: the Rhine; singular masculine ablative from *Rhēnus*,
 Rhēni
 Saxōnum: of the Saxons
 Sclavī: Slavs, plural masculine nominative from *Sclavus*, *Sclavī*
 sōlis: sun; singular masculine genitive from *sōl*, *sōlis*
 sotiātūr: it is joined; 3rd person singular present passive from a
 variant spelling of *sociāre*
 suis: their; plural dative or ablative of *suus*
 terminus: end, boundary, limit; singular masculine nominative
 from *terminus*, *termini*
 terrīs: lands; plural feminine ablative from *terra*, *terrae*
 tertius: third; singular masculine nominative from *trēs* -es -ia,
 tertius -a -um, *terni* -ae -a, *ter*
 vocitant: they call; 3rd person plural present active from *vocitō*,
 vocitāre, *vocitāvi*, *vocitātus*
 Westfalōs: Westphalians, members of a Saxon tribe

Hanc igitur Carolus statuit sibi subdere gentem.

Nec mora, cum tōtīs Francōrum vīribus ipsam

Aggressus¹, lātē ferrō vastāvit et ignī.

Castellum nātūrālī mūnīmine forte

Valde², manū quoque firmātum, quod barbara lingua

Nōminat Ērēsburg, validō cum rōbore cēpit.

Gēns eadem coluit simulācrum³, quod vocitābant

Irminsul, cuius similis factūra columne

Nōn operis parvī fuerat pariterque decōris.

Hoc rēx ēvertēns, mānsit tribus ipse diēbus

In castrīs iuxtā positīs⁴, tum continuātō

Aestātis fervōre diū, caelōque serēnō

Ārdēbant agrī, nec in ipsīs fontibus hūmor

Ūllus erat, multō squālēbant pulvere rīvī.

¹Without delay, with all the strength of the Franks he attacked it (the gentem, which refers to the Saxon people, see previous line), he destroyed widely with sword and fire. Aggressus, being from a deponent verb, would normally be written aggressus est for he attacked, but the est is omitted for metrical reasons.

²A very strong castle, with natural fortification, which the barbarian tongue names Eresburg, he seized strongly with strength and also with a firm hand. Alternatively, validō cum rōbore could mean with a strong stronghold or with strong oakenworks, referring to the castellum; rōbore is ambiguous in this way. For metrical reasons, the macron over the e in valde should be omitted during scansion.

³The same people worships an idol, which they call the Irminsul, whose manufacture is similar to a column, it was not a small work and likewise (was) of beauty.

⁴The king (Charlemagne) overturning this (the Irminsul), he himself remained three days in camp next to the posititon. In this part of the narrative, Charlemagne has not yet captured Eresburg but is camped out next to it, having torn down the idol that was located outside the fort, perhaps in a sacred grove.

aestātis: summer; singular feminine genitive from <i>aestās</i> , <i>aestātis</i>	operis: of work; singular neuter genitive from <i>opus</i> , <i>operis</i>
aggressus: he attacked; singular masculine nominative perfect passive participle from <i>aggredior</i> , <i>aggredi</i> , <i>aggressus</i>	pariter: likewise
agri: fields; plural masculine nominative from <i>ager</i> , <i>agri</i>	parvī: small; singular neuter genitive from <i>parvus</i> -a -um
ārdēbant: they were burning; 3rd person plural imperfect active from <i>ārdeō</i> , <i>ārdēre</i> , <i>ārsi</i> , <i>ārsus</i>	positis: having been placed; plural ablative perfect passive participle from <i>pōnō</i> , <i>pōnere</i> , <i>posū</i> , <i>positus</i>
barbara: barbarous; singular feminine nominative from <i>barbarus</i> , <i>barbara</i> -um, <i>barbarior</i> -or -us, <i>barbarissimus</i> -um	pulvere: dust; singular masculine ablative from <i>pulvis</i> , <i>pulveris</i>
caelō: heaven, sky; singular masculine ablative from <i>caelus</i> , <i>caeli</i>	quō: what; singular ablative of <i>quis</i>
Carolus: Charlemagne, AD 748-814, King of the Franks and Emperor of the Western Roman Empire, member of the Carolingian Dynasty	quod: that; singular neuter accusative of <i>qui</i>
castellum: castle, stronghold; singular neuter accusative from <i>castellum</i> , <i>castellī</i>	rēx: king; singular masculine nominative from <i>rēx</i> , <i>rēgis</i>
castris: forts; plural neuter ablative from <i>castrum</i> , <i>castrī</i>	rīvī: small streams; plural masculine nominative from <i>rīvus</i> , <i>rīvī</i>
cēpit: he took; 3rd person singular perfect active from <i>capiō</i> , <i>capere</i> , <i>cēpi</i> , <i>captus</i>	rōbore: strength, stronghold; singular neuter ablative from <i>rōbur</i> , <i>rōboris</i>
coluit: (the people) worshipped; 3rd person singular perfect active from <i>colō</i> , <i>colere</i> , <i>colui</i> , <i>cultus</i>	serēnō: serene; singular masculine ablative from <i>serēnus</i> , <i>serēna</i> , <i>serēnum</i>
columne: column; singular feminine genitive variant spelling from <i>columna</i> , <i>columnae</i>	sībī: to himself; singular dative of <i>sē</i>
continuātō: continuous; singular masculine ablative from <i>continuātus</i> , <i>continuāta</i> , <i>continuātum</i>	similis: similar; singular common genitive from <i>similis</i> , <i>simile</i> , <i>similior</i> -or -us, <i>simillimus</i> -a -um
cuius: whose; singular genitive from <i>quis</i>	simulācrum: image, likeness; singular neuter nominative from <i>simulācrum</i> , <i>simulācrī</i>
cum: with	squālēbant: they were dry, rough, barren; 3rd person plural imperfect active from <i>squālēō</i> , <i>squālēre</i> , <i>squālū</i> , -
decōris: elegance, beauty; singular masculine genitive from <i>decus</i> , <i>decōris</i>	statuit: he decided; 3rd person singular present active from <i>statuō</i> , <i>statuere</i> , <i>statui</i> , <i>statūtus</i>
diēbus: days; plural common ablative from <i>diēs</i> , <i>diēi</i>	subdere: to place under; subdue; present active infinitive from <i>subdō</i> , <i>subdere</i> , <i>subdidī</i> , <i>subditus</i>
diū: for a long time (adverb)	tōtīs: whole, total; plural ablative from <i>tōtus</i> , <i>tōta</i> , <i>tōtum</i> (gen -ius)
eadem: the same; singular feminine nominative	tribus: three; plural ablative from <i>trēs</i> -es -ia, <i>tertius</i> -a -um, <i>terti</i> -ae -a, <i>ter</i>
erat: he was; 3rd person singular imperfect active from <i>sum</i> , <i>esse</i> , <i>fui</i> , <i>futūrus</i>	tum: then
Ērēsbūrg: a Saxon refuge castle near modern-day Obermarsberg	ūllus: any; singular masculine nominative from <i>ūllus</i> , <i>ūlla</i> , <i>ūllum</i> (gen -ius)
et: and	valde: very
evertens: overthrowing, destroying; singular nominative present participle from <i>ēvertō</i> , <i>ēvertere</i> , <i>ēvertī</i> , <i>ēversus</i>	validō: strong, healthy; singular masculine ablative from <i>validus</i> , <i>valida</i> , <i>validum</i>
factūra: making, manufacture, creation; singular feminine nominative from <i>factūra</i> , <i>factūrae</i>	vāstāvit: he ravaged, devastated; 3rd person singular perfect active from <i>vāstō</i> , <i>vāstāre</i> , <i>vāstāvī</i> , <i>vāstātus</i>
ferrō: iron; singular neuter ablative from <i>ferrum</i> , <i>ferri</i>	vīrībus: strength; plural feminine ablative from <i>vis</i> , <i>vīrī</i>
fervōre: boiling heat; singular masculine ablative from <i>fevor</i> , <i>fevōris</i>	vocitābant: they called; 3rd person plural imperfect active from <i>vocitō</i> , <i>vocitāre</i> , <i>vocitāvī</i> , <i>vocitātus</i>
firmātum: having been hardened, confirmed; singular neuter nominative perfect passive participle from <i>firmō</i> , <i>firmāre</i> , <i>firmāvī</i> , <i>firmātus</i>	
fontibus: fountains; plural masculine ablative from <i>fōns</i> , <i>fontis</i>	
forte: strong; singular neuter accusative from <i>fortis</i> , <i>fortis</i> , <i>forte</i>	
Francōrūm: of the Franks	
fuerat: he had been; 3rd person singular pluperfect active from <i>sum</i> , <i>esse</i> , <i>fui</i> , <i>futūrus</i>	
gēns: people, clan, nation; singular feminine nominative from <i>gēns</i> , <i>gentis</i>	
gentem: people, clan, nation; singular feminine accusative from <i>gēns</i> , <i>gentis</i>	
hanc: this; singular feminine accusative of <i>hic</i> , <i>haec</i> , <i>hoc</i>	
hoc: this; singular neuter accusative of <i>hic</i> , <i>haec</i> , <i>hoc</i>	
hūmor: liquid, fluid; singular masculine nominative from <i>hūmor</i> , <i>hūmōris</i>	
igitur: therefore	
ignī: fire; singular masculine ablative from <i>ignis</i> , <i>ignis</i>	
in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)	
ipsam: itself; singular feminine accusative from <i>ipse</i> , <i>ipsa</i> , <i>ipsum</i>	
ipse: itself; singular masculine nominative from <i>ipse</i> , <i>ipsa</i> , <i>ipsum</i>	
ipsīs: itself; plural dative or ablative from <i>ipse</i> , <i>ipsa</i> , <i>ipsum</i>	
Irmīnsul: the name of an idol, or type of idol that the Saxons worshipped	
iuxtā: near, nearly	
lātē: widely; adverb from <i>lātus</i> , -a, -um	
lingua: tongue, language; singular feminine nominative from <i>lingua</i> , <i>linguae</i>	
mānsit: he remained; 3rd person singular perfect active from <i>maneō</i> , <i>manēre</i> , <i>mānsi</i> , <i>mānsus</i>	
manū: hand; singular feminine ablative from <i>manus</i> , <i>manūs</i>	
mora: delay; singular feminine nominative from <i>mora</i> , <i>mōrae</i>	
multō: many; singular masculine ablative from <i>multus</i> , <i>multa</i> -um, -, <i>plūrimus</i> -a -um	
mūnīmine: defence, fortification, rampart; singular neuter ablative from <i>mūnīmen</i> , <i>mūnīminis</i>	
nātūrāli: natural; singular neuter ablative from <i>nātūrālis</i> , <i>nātūrālis</i> , <i>nātūrāle</i>	
nec: nor, not either	
nōminat: it names; 3rd person singular present active from <i>nōminō</i> , <i>nōmināre</i> , <i>nōmināvī</i> , <i>nōminātus</i>	
nōn: not	

Iamque fatīgābat graviter rēgālia castra
Aucta¹ calōre sitis, sed vīs dedit omnipotentis,
Cui placuit fānī subversiō² iūsta profānī,
Ut mediante diē subitō per concava siccī
Cuiusdam torrentis, erat quī proximus illīs,
Sufficiēns exercituī prōrumperet unda.
Hīs gestīs cum rēx Wisuram³ vēnisset ad amnem,
Obsidibus bis sex ipsā dē gente receptīs,
Ad patriam rediit magnā cum prōsperitāte.

¹*And now the increased thirst from the heat was fatiguing the royal encampment (Charlemagne's troops), but (God) gave of his omnipotent strength.*

²*Whom the just subversion of the profane temple pleased.*

³*With these things having been done, the king came to the river Weser.* The subjunctive *vēnisset* is used as part of a circumstantial clause. It appears that the story relates how Charlemagne's campaign was threatened by a drought, but that his troops miraculously received water, allowing them to prevail.

ad: to, towards, at, according to
 amnem: river; singular masculine accusative from amnis, amnis
 aucta: increased; singular feminine nominative from auctus -a
 -um
 bis: twice
 calōre: warmth, heat; singular masculine ablative from calor,
 calōris
 castra: forts; plural neuter accusative from castrum, castrī
 concava: hollow, concave (likely a dry riverbed); singular
 feminine accusative from concavus, concava, concavum
 cui: who; singular dative from quis
 cum: with
 cuiusdam: of a certain; genitive from quidam
 dē: of, from, away from, down from
 dedit: he gave; 3rd person singular perfect active from dō, dare,
 dedi, datus
 diē: day; singular common ablative from diēs, diēi
 erat: he was; 3rd person singular imperfect active from sum,
 esse, fui, futūrus
 exercitū: army; singular masculine dative from exercitus,
 exercitūs
 fānī: temple; singular neuter genitive from fānum, fānī
 fatīgābat: it was wearying; 3rd person singular imperfect active
 from fatigo, fatigare, fatigavi, fatigatus
 gente: people, clan, nation; singular feminine ablative from
 gēns, gentis
 gestis: having been carried out; plural ablative perfect passive
 participle from gerō, gerere, gessi, gestus
 graviter: gravely, adverb from gravis, grave
 hīs: to these; plural masculine ablative of hic, haec, hoc
 iamque: and already, and now
 illīs: them; plural dative or ablative from ille, illa, illud
 ipsā: itself; singular feminine ablative from ipse, ipsa, ipsum
 iūsta: just, righteous; singular feminine nominative from jūstus,
 jūsta-um, jūstior -or -us, jūtissimus -a -um
 māgnā: large; singular feminine ablative from māgnus, māgna
 -um, major -or -us, maximus -a -um
 mediānte: mid-day (in context), to be in the middle; singular
 ablative present participle from mediō, mediāre, mediāvī,
 mediātus
 obsidibus: hostages; plural common ablative from obses, obsidis
 omnipotēs: all-powerful; singular genitive from omnipotēns,
 (gen.), omnipotentis
 patriam: father; singular feminine accusative from patria,
 patriae
 per: through
 placuit: he pleased; 3rd person singular perfect active from
 placeō, placēre, placuī, placitus
 profānī: profane; singular masculine genitive from profānus,
 profāna, profānum
 prōrumpēt: it was rushing forth; 3rd person singular
 imperfect active subjunctive from prōrumpō, prōrumpere,
 prōrūpi, prōruptus
 prosperitātē: success, prosperity; singular feminine ablative
 from prosperitās, prosperitatis
 proximus: neighbor; singular masculine nominative from
 proximus, proxima, proximum
 quī: who; plural masculine nominative of quis
 receptīs: having been received; plural ablative perfect passive
 participle from recipiō, recipere, recipēi, receptus
 rediūt: he returned; 3rd person singular perfect active from
 redeō, redire, rediū(i)l, reditus
 rēgālia: regal, royal; plural neuter accusative from rēgālis,
 rēgālis, régale
 rēx: king; singular masculine nominative from rēx, rēgis
 sed: but
 sex: six
 siccī: of a dry place; singular masculine genitive from siccus,
 sicca, siccum
 sitis: thirst; singular feminine nominative from sitis, sitis
 subitō: suddenly
 subversiō: overthrow, destruction; singular feminine nominative
 from subversiō, subversiōnis
 sufficiēs: sufficing; singular nominative present participle from
 sufficiō, sufficere, suffēcī, suffectus
 torrentis: torrent, rushing stream; singular feminine genitive
 from torrēns, torrentis
 unda: wave; singular feminine nominative from unda, undae
 ut: so that
 vēnisset: he had come; 3rd person singular pluperfect active
 subjunctive from veniō, venire, vēnī, ventus
 vīs: strength; singular feminine genitive from vis, vīs
 Wisuram: the River Weser (accusative case)

Annō 773

Missīs lēgātīs, Adriānus pāpa sacrātus

Auxilium Carolī studuit dēposcere magnī

Adversus Langōbardōs, quōrum¹ fuit illō

Tempore rēx Dēsīderius; nam valde premēbat

Improba² Rōmānōs huius violentia gentis.

Et quia tunc illī pars maxima subdita³ rēgnō

Ītaliae tōtīus erat, terrāsque per illās,

Scīlicet⁴ hostīlēs, nōn quemquam mittere tūtē

Rōmānus praesul potuit, quī trāmite rēctō

Francōrum terrās peteret, cōnsendere nāvem

Fēcit apud Rōmam lēgātum nōmine Petrum

Ut mare circuitū longō flūctūsque pererrāns

Suspectum vītāret iter: sīc sēpe⁵ vidētur

Tutior ūceanī fervor pelagīque procella,

Quam mentēs hominum, quās turbida commovet īra.

¹Whose king at that time was Desidarius.

²For the evil violence of this people (the Lombards) greatly oppressed the Romans (the Papal states).

³And because the greatest part of all Italy was controlled by that kingdom.

⁴Really enemies, the Roman president (the Pope) couldn't safely send anyone who sought Frankish lands through a straight path.

⁵Thus often the fervor of the ocean and the storms of the sea appear safer than the minds of men, which turbid anger moves.

Adriānus: Pope Adrian I, who was Pope from February 1st 772 to December 25th 795
 adversus: against; preposition that takes the accusative
 annō: year; singular masculine ablative from *annus*, *annī*
 apud: at, by, near
 auxilium: help, aid; singular neuter accusative from *auxilium*, *auxiliū*
 Caroli: Charlemagne, AD 748-814, King of the Franks and Emperor of the Western Roman Empire, member of the Carolingian Dynasty
 circuitū: circuit, outer shore; singular masculine ablative from *circuitus*, *circuitū*
 commovet: it agitates; 3rd person singular present active from *commoveō*, *commovēre*, *commōvi*, *commōtus*
 cōscendere: to climb up, mount; present active infinitive from *cōscendō*, *cōscendere*, *cōscendi*, *cōscēnsus*
 dēpōscere: to demand, require, challenge; present active infinitive from *dēpōscō*, *dēpōscere*, *dēpōscī*, -
 Dēsiderius: King Desiderius, final King of the Lombards (720-786)
 erat: he was; 3rd person singular imperfect active from *sum*, *esse*, *fui*, *futūrus*
 et: and
 fēcit: he made; 3rd person singular perfect active from *faciō*, *facere*, *fēci*, *factus*
 fervor: boiling heat, passion; singular masculine nominative from *fervor*, *fervōris*
 flūctus: waves, billows, turbulences; plural masculine accusative from *flūctus*, *flūctūs*
 Francōrum: of the Franks
 fuit: he was; 3rd person singular perfect active from *sum*, *esse*, *fui*, *futūrus*
 gentis: of the people, clan, nation; singular feminine genitive from *gēns*, *gentis*
 hominū: of persons, of men; plural masculine genitive from *homō*, *hominis*
 hostilēs: enemies; plural common accusative from *hostilis*, *hostilē*
 huius: of this; singular genitive of *hic*, *haec*, *hoc*
 illās: them; plural feminine accusative from *ille*, *illa*, *illud*
 illī: that; singular neuter dative from *ille*, *illa*, *illud*
 illō: that; singular neuter ablative from *ille*, *illa*, *illud*
 improba: bad; singular feminine nominative from *improbus*, *improba*, *improbum*
 īra: anger; singular feminine nominative from *īra*, *īrae*
 ītaliae: Italy (genitive or locative case)
 iter: journey, trip; singular neuter accusative from *iter*, *itineris*
 Langōbardōs: the Lombards
 legātūs: legate, ambassador; plural masculine ablative from *lēgātūs*, *lēgātī*
 lēgātūm: legate, ambassador; singular masculine accusative from *lēgātūs*, *lēgātī*
 longō: long, far; singular masculine ablative from *longus*, *longa* -um, *longior* -or -us, *longissimus* -a -um
 māgni: great; singular masculine genitive from *māgnus*, *māgna* -um, *major* -or -us, *maximus* -a -um
 mare: sea; singular neuter accusative from *mare*, *maris*
 maxima: biggest; singular feminine nominative from *māgnus*, *māgna* -um, *major* -or -us, *maximus* -a -um
 mentēs: minds; plural feminine nominative from *mēns*, *mentis*
 missis: having been sent; plural ablative perfect passive participle from *mittō*, *mittere*, *mīsi*, *missus*
 mittere: to send; present active infinitive from *mittō*, *mittere*, *mīsi*, *missus*
 nam: yes, truly
 nāvem: boat; singular feminine accusative from *nāvis*, *nāvis*
 nōmine: name; singular neuter ablative from *nōmen*, *nōminis*
 nōn: not
 ūceanī: ocean; singular masculine genitive from *Oceanus*, *Oceani*
 Pāpa: Pope; singular masculine nominative from *Papa*, *Papae*
 pars: part; singular feminine nominative from *pars*, *partis*
 pelagī: of the sea; singular neuter genitive from *pelagus*, *pelagī*
 per: through
 pererrāns: wandering through, rambling over; singular nominative present participle from *pererrō*, *pererrāre*, *pererrāvī*, *pererrātūs*
 peteret: he was seeking; 3rd person singular imperfect active subjunctive from *petō*, *petere*, *petīvī*, *petitus*
 Petrum: Peter; singular masculine accusative from *Petrus*, *Petri*
 potuit: he was able; 3rd person singular perfect active from *possum*, *posse*, *potūi*, -
 praeſul: president; singular common nominative from *praeſul*, *praeſulis*
 premēbat: it was oppressing; 3rd person singular imperfect active from *premo*, *premere*, *pressī*, *pressus*
 procella: storm, violence, sudden attack; singular feminine nominative from *procella*, *procellae*
 quam: how? how much?

Hīc igitur Petrus Rōmā dīrēctus¹ ab urbe,
Per mare Massiliam petiit, longumque deinde
Per terrēnum² iter, in vīllā Theodōne vocātā
Īnsignis Carolī pietātem rēgis adīvit,
Ōrāns dēvōtē satis, ut dēfendere vellet³
Ecclesiam Petri, summus quī clāviger⁴ aulae
Illi celēstis dare praemia maxima posset;
Nec nōn pontificis succurreret āxietātī,
Rōmānīque simul populī mala plūrima passī⁵,
Cui libertātis iam spēs, vītaeque tenendae
Ūnica⁶ post Dominum, tantum restāret in illō.
Tālibus audītis, causam rēx prōtinus omnem
Sollicitō volvēns animō, satis affore iūstum
Perpendit, grātumque Deō, dēfēnsor ut ipse
Sēdis apostolicae tōtīs prō vīribus esset.

¹Here, therefore, Peter having been directed from the city of Rome, sought Marseille through the sea.

²And thereafter a long trip over land. The -um in terrēnum elides for scansion.

³Pleading devoutly enough that he (Charlemagne) might defend the Church of Peter.

⁴Who, highest key-bearer in the celestial court, could give to him (Charlemagne) the greatest reward. Here Peter, the Papal legate, promises Charlemagne spiritual rewards for his military support of the Papal States against the Lombards.

⁵And also that he might aid the anxiety of the Pope and the many evils suffered by the Roman people.

⁶To whom now liberty, hope, and the keeping of (their) lives, alone after the Lord (God), lay only in him.

ab: from, out of, by, since
 adivit: he besought, approached, visited; 3rd person singular perfect active from *adeō*, *adire*, *adivī*, *aditus*
 affore: to be (in the future) future infinitive from *adsum*
 animō: soul, mind, live; singular masculine ablative from *animus*, *animi*
 ānxitātī: anxiety; singular feminine dative ānxitās, ānxitātīs
 apostolae: of the apostolic; singular feminine genitive from *apostolicus*, *apostolica*, *apostolicum*
 audītīs: having been heard; plural ablative from *audiō*, *audīre*, *audīvī*, *audītūs*
 aulae: court; singular feminine genitive from *aula*, *aulae*
 Caroli: Charlemagne, AD 748-814, King of the Franks and Emperor of the Western Roman Empire, member of the Carolingian Dynasty
 causam: cause; singular feminine accusative from *causa*, *causae*
 celestis: heavenly; singular common genitive from *celestis*, *celestē*, *celestior* -or -us, *celestissimus* -a -um
 clāviger: key-bearer; singular masculine nominative from *clāviger*, *clavigerī*
 cui: who; singular dative from *quis*
 dare: to give; present active infinitive from *dō*, *dare*, *dedī*, *datus*
 dēfendere: to defend; present infinitive from *dēfendō*, *dēfendere*, *dēfendi*, *dēfēnsus*
 dēfēnsor: defender, protector; singular masculine nominative from *dēfēnsor*, *dēfēnsōris*
 deinde: thereafter
 Deō: to God; singular masculine dative from *Deus*, *Dei*
 dēvōtē: devotedly; adverb from *dēvōtus*, *dēvōta*, *dēvōtum*
 dīrectus: having been directed; singular masculine nominative perfect passive participle from *dirigō*, *dirigere*, *dirēxī*, *dīrectus*
 Dominum: the Lord; singular masculine accusative from *dominus*, *domīni*
 ecclēsiam: church; singular feminine accusative from *ecclēsia*, *ecclēsiae*
 eset: he (might) have been; 3rd person singular imperfect active subjunctive from *sum*, *esse*, *fuī*, *futūrus*
 fore: to be (in the future); future infinitive of *sum*, *esse*, *fuī*, *futūrus*
 grātum: agreeable; singular neuter accusative from *grātus*, *grāta* -um, *grātior* -or -us, *grātissimus* -a -um
 hīc: here. *Hic* (meaning 'this') would fit better in context but wouldn't fit the meter.
 iam: already, now
 igitur: therefore
 illī: to that one (Charlemagne); singular dative from *ille*, *illa*, *illud*
 illō: in that one (Charlemagne); singular masculine ablative from *ille*, *illa*, *illud*
 in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
 īsignis: distinguished; singular common genitive from īsignis, *īsignis*, *īsigne*
 ipse: himself; singular masculine nominative from *ipse*, *ipsa*, *ipsum*
 iter: journey, trip; singular neuter accusative from *iter*, *itineris*
 iūstūm: just, righteous; singular neuter accusative from *iūstus*, *iūsta* -um, *iūstior* -or -us, *iūstissimus* -a -um
 libertātīs: of liberty; singular feminine genitive from *libertās*, *libertātis*
 longum: long, far; singular neuter accusative from *longus*, *longa* -um, *longior* -or -us, *longissimus* -a -um
 mala: evil, bad
 mare: sea; singular neuter accusative from *mare*, *maris*
 Massiliam: Marseille, a city in southern France (accusative case)
 maxima: very big; plural neuter accusative from *māgnus*, *māgna* -um, *major* -or -us, *maximus* -a -um
 nec: nec non = and also
 nōn: not
 omnem: all, every; singular common accusative from *omnis*, *omnis*, *omne*
 ūrāns: requesting, praying; singular nominative present participle from *ōro*, *ōrare*, *ōrāvī*, *ōrātus*
 passi: passi + est = they suffered. Est is omitted for metrical reasons.
 per: through
 perpendit: he decided, he weighed carefully; 3rd person singular present active from *perpendō*, *perpendere*, *perpendi*, *perpēnsus*
 petītī: he sought for; 3rd person singular perfect active from *petō*, *petere*, *petīvī*, *petītus*
 Petri: Peter; singular masculine genitive from *Petrus*, *Petri*
 Petrus: Peter; singular masculine nominative from *Petrus*, *Petri*
 pietātēm: dutiful conduct, piety; singular feminine accusative from *pietas*, *pietatis*
 plūrima: very many; plural neuter accusative from *multus*, *multa* -um, -a, *plūrimus* -a -um
 pontificis: of the Pope; singular masculine genitive from

pontifex, pontificis
 populi: the (Roman) people; plural masculine nominative from *populus*, *populi*
 posset: that he could; 3rd person singular imperfect active subjunctive from *possum*, *posse*, *potuī*, -
 post: behind, after, since
 praemia: rewards; plural neuter accusative from *praemium*, *praemi(i)*
 prō: for, in favor of, before, in place of
 prōtinus: forthwith, immediately
 quī: who; singular masculine nominative of *quis*
 régis: of the king; singular masculine genitive from *rēx*, *rēgis*
 restātē: it remained; 3rd person singular imperfect active subjunctive from *restō*, *restāre*, *restītī*, -
 rēx: king; singular masculine nominative from *rēx*, *rēgis*
 Rōmā: Rome; singular feminine ablative from *Rōma*, *Rōmae*
 Rōmānīque: and the Romans
 satis: enough (adverb)
 sēdis: seat; singular feminine genitive from *sēdēs*, *sēdis*
 simul: at the same time as
 sollicitō: agitated, restless, anxious; singular masculine ablative from *sollicitus*, *sollicita*, *sollicitum*
 spēs: hope; singular feminine nominative from *spēs*, *speī*
 succurreret: he might bring aid; 3rd person singular imperfect active subjunctive from *succurro*, *succurrere*, *succurri*, *succursus*
 summus: highest, greatest; singular masculine nominative from *summus*, *summa*, *summum*
 tālibus: such (things); plural ablative from *tālis*, *tālis*, *tāle*
 tantum: so much, so great, this many; singular neuter nominative from *tantus*, *tanta*, *tantum*
 tenēdāe: holding; singular feminine genitive gerund from *tenēō*, *tenēre*, *tenēi*, *tentus*
 terrēnum: land, ground; singular neuter accusative from *terrenus*, *terrena*, *terrenum*
 tōtīs: whole, total; plural ablative from *tōtus*, *tōta*, *tōtum* (gen -ius)
 unica: only, sole; singular feminine nominative from *ūnicus*, *ūnica*, *ūnicum*
 Theodōne: the name of a villa that Charlemagne was in
 urbe: city; singular feminine ablative from *urbs*, *urbis*
 ut: so that
 vellet: that he would want; 3rd person singular future active from *vello*, *vellere*, *velli*, *vulsus*
 vīllā: villa; singular feminine ablative from *vīlla*, *vīllae*
 vīribus: strength; plural feminine ablative from *vis*, *viris*
 vītāe: life; singular feminine genitive from *vīta*, *vītāe*
 vocātā: having been called; singular feminine ablative perfect passive participle from *vocō*, *vocāre*, *vocāvī*, *vocātus*
 volvēns: rolling, mulling; singular nominative present participle from *volvo*, *volvere*, *volvi*, *volutus*

Atque suō statim rēgnō collēgit ab omnī
Rōboris inmēnsī variīs ex gentibus agmen.
Quod sēcum dūcēns, Genuam pervēnit in urbem,
Quam¹ rapidō cursū Rhodanus praeterfluit amnis;
Tum geminō² Langōbardōs invādere bellō
Dēcrēvit, populumque suum dīvīsit, et ūnam
Cum duce Bernhardō partem praecēperat īre
Per montem Iovis—id nōmen vetus indidit³ error—
At reliquam per Cīnisium rēx dūxerat ipse.
Trānscēnsīs igitur horrendīs Alpibus, īstar⁴
Turbinis Ausoniae duplex exercitus arva
Irruerat, lātē rēgnum vastāns opulentum.

¹Which the Rhone river flows past with rapid course.

²Then he decided to invade the Lombards with two-fold war. Charlemagne split his troops into two parts.

³With Bernard (son of Charles Martel and uncle of Charlemagne) he had commanded (one) party to go through Mount Jove -- an ancient error bestowed that name. Bernard likely went through the Great St. Bernard Pass in the Alps. Perhaps the "ancient error" mentioned was the pagan belief in Jupiter/Jove. The Bernard mentioned is not the same Bernard as Saint Bernard of Clairvaux, who lived 1090-1153.

⁴Like a whirlwind of Ausonia the double army had rushed into the fields, widely ravaging the opulent kingdom.
Ausonia is a poetic name for Italy.

ab: from, out of, by, since	Rhodanus, Rhodanī
agmen: marching army; singular neuter accusative from agmen, <i>rōboris</i> : strength; singular neuter genitive from <i>rōbur</i> , <i>rōboris</i>	<i>sēcum</i> : with oneself
<i>agminis</i>	<i>suō</i> : his; singular ablative of <i>suus</i>
Alpibus: Alps (usually pl.), mountains to the north of Italy; plural statim: immediately	<i>suūm</i> : his; singular masculine accusative from <i>suus</i> , <i>sui</i>
feminine ablative from <i>Alpis</i> , <i>Alpis</i>	<i>trāscēns</i> : having been passed over; plural ablative perfect
amnis: river; singular masculine nominative from <i>amnis</i> , <i>amnis</i>	passive participle from <i>trāscendō</i> , <i>trāscendere</i> ,
arva: fields; plural neuter accusative from <i>arvum</i> , <i>arvī</i>	<i>trāscēndī</i> , <i>trāscēns</i>
at: and	tum: then
atque: and	turbinis: whirlwind; singular masculine genitive from <i>turbō</i> ,
Ausoniae: of Ausonia, a poetic name for Italy	<i>turbinis</i>
bellō: battle, war; singular neuter ablative from <i>bellum</i> , <i>bellī</i>	<i>ūnam</i> : one; singular feminine accusative from <i>ūnus</i> -a -um,
Bernhardō: Bernard, son of Charles Martel and uncle of	<i>primus</i> -a -um, <i>singulī</i> -ae -a, <i>semel</i>
Charlemagne	urbem: city; singular feminine accusative from <i>urbs</i> , <i>urbis</i>
Cinisium: probably a city or region in the Lombard Kingdom,	<i>variis</i> : various, diverse; plural ablative from <i>varius</i> , <i>varia</i> ,
perhaps the city of Cassino	<i>varium</i>
collēgit: he assembled, he collected; 3rd person singular perfect	<i>vāstāns</i> : ravaging, devastating; singular nominative present
active from <i>colligō</i> , <i>colligere</i> , <i>collēgi</i> , <i>collēctus</i>	participle from <i>vāstō</i> , <i>vāstāre</i> , <i>vāstāvī</i> , <i>vāstātus</i>
cum: with	vetus: old; singular nominative from <i>vetus</i> , <i>vetoris</i> (gen.),
cursū: course; singular neuter ablative from <i>currō</i> , <i>currere</i> ,	veterior -or -us, <i>veterrimus</i> -a -um
<i>cucurī</i> , <i>cursus</i>	
dēcrēvit: he decided; 3rd person singular perfect active from	
<i>dēcernō</i> , <i>dēcernere</i> , <i>dēcrēvī</i> , <i>dēcrētus</i>	
dīvīsit: he divided; 3rd person singular perfect active from	
<i>dīvidō</i> , <i>dīvidere</i> , <i>dīvīsi</i> , <i>dīvīsus</i>	
duce: leader; singular masculine ablative from <i>dux</i> , <i>ducis</i>	
dūcēns: leading; singular nominative present participle from	
<i>dūcō</i> , <i>dūcere</i> , <i>dūxī</i> , <i>ductus</i>	
duplex: double; singular nominative from <i>duplex</i> , (gen.),	
<i>duplicis</i>	
dūxerat: he had read: 3rd person singular pluperfect from <i>dūcō</i> ,	
<i>dūcere</i> , <i>dūxī</i> , <i>ductus</i>	
error: error, wandering, deception; 1st person singular present	
passive from <i>errō</i> , <i>errāre</i> , <i>errāvī</i> , <i>errātus</i>	
et: and	
ex: out of, from	
exercitus: army; singular masculine nominative from <i>exercitus</i> ,	
<i>exercitūs</i>	
geminō: double; singular masculine ablative from <i>geminus</i> ,	
<i>gemina</i> , <i>geminum</i>	
gentibus: peoples, clans, nations; plural feminine ablative from	
<i>gēns</i> , <i>gentis</i>	
Genuam: Genoa, modern-day Genoa, Italy	
horrendis: horrendous; plural ablative from <i>horrendus</i> -a -um	
id: it	
igitur: therefore	
in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)	
indidit: it named after; 3rd person singular perfect active from	
<i>indō</i> , <i>indere</i> , <i>indidī</i> , <i>inditus</i>	
inmēnsi: of immense; singular masculine genitive from	
<i>inmēnsus</i> , <i>inmēnsa</i> , <i>inmēnsum</i>	
īnstar: as big as	
invādere: to invade; present infinitive from <i>invādō</i> , <i>invādere</i> ,	
<i>invāsī</i> , <i>invāsus</i>	
Iovis: Jovis, Jupiter	
ipse: himself; singular masculine nominative from <i>ipse</i> , <i>ipsa</i> ,	
<i>ipsum</i>	
īre: to go; present infinitive from <i>eō</i> , <i>īre</i> , <i>īi</i> , <i>itus</i> (irregular)	
irruerat: it had forced its way in; 3rd person singular pluperfect	
active from <i>irruō</i> , <i>irruere</i> , <i>irruī</i> , <i>irruttus</i>	
Langōbardōs: the Lombards (plural accusative)	
lātē: widely; adverb from <i>lātus</i> , -a, -um	
montem: mountain; singular masculine accusative from <i>mōns</i> ,	
<i>montis</i>	
nōmen: name; singular neuter accusative from <i>nōmen</i> , <i>nōminis</i>	
omni: all, every; singular ablative from <i>omnis</i> , <i>omnis</i> , <i>omne</i>	
opulentum: rich; singular masculine accusative from <i>opulentus</i>	
-a -um	
partem: party, part; singular feminine accusative from <i>pars</i> ,	
<i>partis</i>	
per: through	
pervēnit: he arrived; 3rd person singular present active from	
<i>perveniō</i> , <i>pervenire</i> , <i>pervēnī</i> , <i>perventus</i>	
populūm: people, populace; singular masculine accusative from	
<i>populus</i> , <i>populī</i>	
praeceperat: he had ordered; 3rd person singular pluperfect	
active from <i>praecipiō</i> , <i>praecipere</i> , <i>praecepī</i> , <i>praeceptus</i>	
praeterfluit: it flows past; 3rd person singular present active	
from <i>praeterfluo</i> , <i>praeterfluere</i> , - , -	
quam: how? how much?	
quod: what; singular neuter nom. or acc. of qui	
rapidō: quick, rapid; singular masculine ablative from <i>rapidus</i> ,	
<i>rapida</i> -um, <i>rapidior</i> -or -us, <i>rapidissimus</i> -a -um	
rēgnō: kingdom; singular neuter ablative from <i>rēgnum</i> , <i>rēgnī</i>	
rēgnūm: kingdom; singular neuter nominative from <i>rēgnum</i> ,	
<i>rēgnī</i>	
reliquām: remaining; singular feminine accusative from	
<i>reliquus</i> , <i>reliqua</i> , <i>reliquum</i>	
rēx: king; singular masculine nominative from <i>rēx</i> , <i>rēgis</i>	
Rhodanus: the Rhone; singular masculine nominative from	

Iamque metus cūnctōs Francōrum percūlit ingēns.

Nam Dēsīderium, pīmō quī bella parābat,

Sē frūstrā Carolō spērāns² obsistere posse,

Congressū necdum factō, terrōre fugāvit,

Et clausum Ticinō, cui nunc est Pāpia nōmen,

Rēgius admōtīs exercitus³ undique castrīs

Obsēdit, variīsque modīs per plūrima temptāns

Temporis hībernī spatiō mōlīmina tōtō,

Nōn urbīs poterat mūrōs irrumpere ferrō.

¹*And now a great fear of the Franks struck everyone.*

²*Vainly himself hoping to be able to oppose Charlemagne, before a meeting (in battle between Charlemagne and Desiderius) having occurred, he (Charlemagne) routed (Desiderius) in terror and (Desiderius) having been shut up in Ticinum. Here *clausum* is a past passive participle in the accusative which matches *Dēsīderium*, also in the accusative. *Dēsīderium* is the object of *fugāvit*. *Ticinō* is in the ablative of location.*

³*The regal army (of the Franks) having moved up camps everywhere besieged (Ticinum/Pavia) and with various methods through many exertions trying (to breach the city wall) through the total space of the time of winter, was not able to break the walls of the city with iron. However, in June 774 Desiderius succumbed to the siege and surrendered.*

admōtīs: having been moved up, brought near; plural ablative perfect passive participle from *admoveō*, *admovēre*,
 admōvi, *admōtus*
 bella: battles, wars; plural neuter accusative from *bellum*, *bellī*
 Carolō: Charlemagne, AD 748-814, King of the Franks and
 Emperor of the Western Roman Empire, member of the
 Carolingian Dynasty
 castrīs: camps; plural neuter ablative from *castrum*, *castrī*
 clausum: having been enclosed, shut up; singular neuter
 accusative perfect passive participle from *claudō*, *claudere*,
 clausī, *clausus*
 congressū: meeting; singular masculine ablative from
 congressus, *congressū*
 cui: who; singular dative from *quis*
 cūnctōs: all, whole; plural masculine accusative from *cūnctus*,
 cūcta, *cūctum*
 Dēsiderium: Desiderius, final King of the Lombards (720-786)
 est: he is; 3rd person singular present active from *sum*, *esse*,
 fuī, *futūrus*
 et: and
 exercitus: army; singular masculine nominative from *exercitus*,
 exercitūs
 factō: having been made; singular masculine ablative perfect
 passive participle from *faciō*, *facere*, *fēcī*, *factus*
 ferro: iron; singular neuter ablative from *ferrum*, *ferī*
 Francōrum: of the Franks
 frūstrā: futile (adverb)
 fugāvit: he routed, chased away; 3rd person singular perfect
 active from *fugō*, *fugāre*, *fugāvī*, *fugātus*
 hibernī: winter, winter camp; singular masculine genitive from
 hibernus, *hiberna*, *hibernum*
 iam: already, now, soon
 ingēns: huge, enormous; singular nominative from *ingēns*,
 ingēntis (gen.), *ingēntior* -or -us, *ingēntissimus* -a -um
 irrumpere: to invade, penetrate; present infinitive from
 irrumpō, *irrumpere*, *irrūpī*, *irruptus*
 metus: fear; singular masculine nominative from *metus*, *metūs*
 modis: ways; plural masculine ablative from *modus*, *modī*
 mōlimina: exertions, efforts; plural neuter accusative from
 mōlimen, *mōliminis*
 mūrōs: city walls; plural masculine accusative from *mūrus*, *mūrī*
 nam: yes, truly
 necdum: not yet
 nōmen: name; singular neuter nominative from *nōmen*, *nōminis*
 nōn: not
 nunc: now
 obsēdit: he besieged; 3rd person singular perfect active from
 obsidēō, *obsidēre*, *obsēdi*, *obsessus*
 obsistere: to oppose, resist, withstand; present infinitive from
 obsistō, *obsistere*, *obstītī*, *obstitus*
 Papia: Pavia a.k.a. Ticinum, capital of the Kingdom of the
 Lombards from 572 to 774.
 parābat: he was preparing; 3rd person singular imperfect active
 from *parō*, *parāre*, *parāvī*, *parātus*
 per: through
 percūlit: it struck down, overpowered; 3rd person singular
 perfect active from *percēllō*, *percēllere*, *percūlī*, *percūlūs*
 plūrima: very many; plural neuter accusative from *multus*,
 multa -um, -, *plūrimus* -a -um
 posse: to be able; present infinitive from *possum*, *posse*, *potuī*, -
 poterat: he was able to; 3rd person singular imperfect active
 from *possum*, *posse*, *potuī*, -
 prīmō: first; singular masculine ablative from *prīmus*, *prīma*,
 prīmū
 qui: who; plural masculine nominative of *quis*
 rēgius: royal, regal; singular masculine nominative from *rēgius*,
 rēgia, *rēgium*
 se: himself
 spatiō: space; singular neuter ablative from *spatiū*, *spati(i)*
 spērāns: hoping; singular nominative present participle from
 spērō, *spērāre*, *spērāvī*, *spērātus*
 temporis: of the time; singular neuter genitive from *tempus*,
 temporis
 temptāns: trying; singular nominative present participle from
 temptō, *temptāre*, *temptāvī*, *temptātus*
 terrōre: terror; singular masculine ablative from *terror*, *terrōris*
 tōtō: whole, total; singular ablative from *tōtus*, *tōta*, *tōtūm* (gen
 -ius)
 undique: from all sides
 Ticinō: Pavia a.k.a. Ticinum, capital of the Kingdom of the
 Lombards from 572 to 774.
 urbis: city; singular feminine genitive from *urbs*, *urbis*
 variūs: various, diverse; plural ablative from *varius*, *varia*,
 varium

Annō 774.

Tālēs Ītalīcīs dum rēs agerentur in hōrīs¹,

Saxonēs sibi contiguōs invādere finēs

Ausī² Francōrum, pāgum quī dīcitur Hassī

Praedantur, flammīsque simul populantur et armīs.

Quōs animāvit ad hoc longinqua profectiō³ rēgis,

Crēdentēs ulciscendī sībī tunc fore⁴ tempus

Damna, prius per eum que maxima sustinuēre.

Quī tamen usque locum quī Frīdēshlar vocitātur

Prōgressī, quandam cupiērunt trādere flammīs

Ecclesiam, quam sacrāvit Bonifācius⁵ illīc

Martir et antistes Chrīstō dīlēctus in aevum.

Hoc frūstrā nīsōs⁶ facinus complēre nefandum,

Invāsit subitō terror dīvīnitus ingēns,

Atque fugā turpī trepidōs repēdāre coēgit

Ad patriam, quōs nōn hostēs, nōn arma fugārunt.

¹While such things were being done in Italy in those times.

²The Saxons dared to invade the boundaries of the Franks neighboring themselves. Ausī would usually be ausī sunt for they dared; in a poetic context it is permitted to omit the sunt for metrical purposes.

³Whom the long departure of the king inspired to this. Profectiō typically has a macron over the o, but it must be short here to fit the meter.

⁴Then believing the time to be of avenging themselves the very great damages, previously that they had sustained through him (Charlemagne). Maxima modifies damna, fore is the future infinitive of esse, and sustinuēre is not an infinitive but rather an alternate way to spell sustinuērunt.

⁵Which Boniface, martyr and overseer ever-beloved by Christ, consecrated there. Saint Boniface (AD 675-754) famously chopped down Donar's Oak in Fritzlar.

⁶They vainly advanced to complete this wicked act, suddenly a massive terror from heaven assailed (them) and forced the trembling ones (the Saxons) to retreat in turpid flight to their fatherland, whom were routed not by enemies, nor by weapons (but by the supernatural intervention of God).

ad: to, towards, at, according to
 aevum: eternity; singular neuter accusative from *aevum*, *aevī*
 agerentur: they were being done; 3rd person plural imperfect
 passive subjunctive from *agō*, *agere*, *ēgī*, *āctus*
 animāvit: it animated, inspired; 3rd person singular perfect
 active from *animō*, *animāre*, *animāvī*, *animātus*
 annō: year; singular masculine ablative from *annus*, *ānnī*
 antistes: overseer; singular common nominative from *antistes*,
 antistitis
 arma: weapons; plural neuter nominative from *armum*, *armī*
 armīs: weapons; plural neuter ablative from *armum*, *armī*
 atque: and
 ausī: ausī sunt = they dared, sunt is omitted for metrical
 reasons; plural masculine nominative perfect passive
 participle from *audeō*, *audēre*, *ausus sum*
 Bonifacius: Saint Boniface, AD 675-754
 Chrīstō: Christ (ablative case)
 coēgit: it forced; 3rd person singular perfect active from *cōgō*,
 cōgere, *coēgī*, *coāctus*
 complēre: to complete, to fill up; present infinitive from
 compleō, *complēre*, *complēvī*, *complētus*
 contiguōs: bordering, neighboring, contiguous; plural masculine
 accusative from *contiguus*, *contigua*, *contiguum*
 crēdentes: believing; plural common nominative present
 participle from *crēdō*, *crēdere*, *crēdidi*, *crēditus*
 cupiērunt: they desired, alternative spelling of *cupivērunt*; 3rd
 person plural perfect active from *cupio*, *cupere*, *cupivī*,
 cupitus
 damna: damages, injuries; plural neuter accusative from
 damnum, *damni*
 dīcitur: it is said; 3rd person singular present passive from *dīcō*,
 dīcere, *dīxi*, *dīctus*
 dīlēctus: having been loved, beloved; singular masculine
 nominative from *dilectus*, *dilectus*
 dīvīnitus: divinely, of heaven (adverb)
 dum: while, as long as, until
 ecclēsiām: church; singular feminine accusative from *ecclēsia*,
 ecclēsiae
 et: and
 eum: to him; singular masculine accusative from *is*, *ea*, *id*
 facinus: crime, outrage; singular neuter accusative from
 facinus, *facinoris*
 finēs: boundaries, ends, limits; plural common accusative from
 finis, *finis*
 flammīs: flames; plural feminine ablative from *flamma*, *flammæ*
 fore: to be (in the future); future infinitive from *sum*, *esse*, *fuī*,
 futūrus
 Francōrum: of the Franks
 Frīdēshlar: Fritzlar, Germany
 frūstrā: futile
 fugā: flight, escape; singular feminine ablative from *fuga*, *fugae*
 fugārunt: they routed, chased away, variant spelling of
 fugāvērunt; 3rd person plural perfect active from *fugō*,
 fugāre, *fugāvī*, *fugātus*
 Hassi: Hesse, a region in Germany
 hoc: this; singular neuter accusative from *hic*, *haec*, *hoc*
 hōris: times; plural feminine ablative from *hōra*, *hōrae*
 hostēs: enemies; plural common nominative from *hostis*, *hostis*
 illīc: there
 in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
 ingēns: huge, enormous; singular nominative from *ingēns*,
 ingētis (gen.), *ingētior* -or -us, *ingētissimus* -a -um
 invādere: to invade; present infinitive from *invādō*, *invādere*,
 invāsī, *invāsus*
 invāsīt: it invaded; 3rd person singular perfect active from
 invādō, *invādere*, *invāsī*, *invāsus*
 Italicis: in Italy; plural masculine ablative from *Italicus*, *Italici*
 locum: place; singular masculine accusative from *locus*, *locī*
 longinqua: long, prolonged; singular feminine nominative from
 longinquis, *longinqua* -um, *longinquier* -or -us,
 longinquissimus -a -um
 martyr: martyr, one who dies for their faith
 maxima: biggest; plural neuter accusative from *māgnus*, *māgna*
 -um, *major* -or -us, *maximus* -a -um
 nefandum: impious, wicked; singular neuter accusative from
 nefundus, *nefanda*, *nefandum*
 nīsōs: having advanced, pressed upon; plural masculine
 accusative perfect participle from *nītor*, *nītī*, *nīsus sum*
 nōn: not
 pāgum: district, region; singular masculine accusative from
 pāgus, *pāgi*
 patriam: fatherland; singular feminine accusative from *patria*,
 patriae
 per: through
 populantur: they are ravaged, devastated; 3rd person plural
 present passive from *populō*, *populāre*, *populāvī*, *populātus*
 praedantur: they are despoiled; 3rd person plural present
 passive from *praedor*, *praedārī*, *praedātus sum*
 prius: before

At rēx, dispositīs legiōnibus ad Ticinēnsum

Obsidiōne¹ iūgī populum bellōque premendum,

Ōrandī² causā Rōmae loca sāncta petīvit.

Illīc supplicibus vōtīs ex corde perāctīs,

Ad Ticinum rediit, que iam certāmine longō

Fessa³ repugnandī vīrēs āmīserat omnēs.

Dēdita⁴ tum Francīs haec urbs clārissima, cūnctīs

Exemplō fuerat reliquīs; nam prōtinus⁵ omnēs

Trādiderant Carolō sēsē concorditer urbēs

Eiusdem rēgnī, quod iam⁶ sībī iūre subāctum

Disposuit, quantum⁷ potuit prō tempore tālī

Ad sēdēs etenim⁸ cupiēns remeāre paternās,

Accelerābat iter, sēcum dūcēns memorātum⁹

Ītaliae rēgem, noviter quem cooperat¹⁰ armīs.

Hīc hūmānārum¹¹ videās lūdībria rērum,

Quam variō cursū vītiae rota volvitur huius.

¹And to press the people (of Pavia/Ticinum) with constant seige and war. An English-like word order would be (ad) premendum populum (cum) iūgī obsidiōne (et) bellō.

²For the reason of prayer he sought the holy places of Rome. Ōrandī is a genitive gerund.

³He returned to Pavia/Ticinium, which, now tired by long battle, had lost all strength of fighting. Repugnandī is a genitive gerund.

⁴This most famous (city) having then been given to the Franks, it was an example to all the rest (of the cities of Lombardy).

⁵Because immediately all cities of the same kingdom (Lombardy) gave themselves over to Charlemagne amicably.

⁶Which he now arranged having subjected them rightly to himself.

⁷As much as he could in such time.

⁸Because, desiring to return to his paternal habitations (the land of the Franks).

⁹Leading with him the aforementioned king of Italy (Desiderius).

¹⁰Whom recently he had seized with weapons.

¹¹Here you see the mockeries of human affairs, how by various courses the wheel of this life is turned.

accelerābat: he was speeding up; 3rd person singular imperfect active from accelerō, accelerāre, accelerāvī, accelerātus	pressus
ad: to, towards, at, according to	prō: for, in favor of, before, in place of
āmiserat: it had lost; 3rd person singular pluperfect active from	prōtinus: immediately
āmittō, āmittere, āmisi, āmissus	quam: how
armīs: weapons; plural neuter ablative from armum, armī	quantum: how much?
at: and	que: and
bellō: battle, war; singular neuter ablative from bellum, bellī	quem: what, singular masculine accusative of qui
Carolō: Charlemagne, AD 748-814, King of the Franks and	quod: what; singular neuter nom. or acc. of qui
Emperor of the Western Roman Empire, member of the	redīvit: he returned; 3rd person singular perfect active from
Carolingian Dynasty	redeō, redire, redivī(ii), reditus
causā: reason, cause; singular feminine ablative from causa,	rēgem: king; singular masculine accusative from rēx, rēgis
causae	rēgnī: of the kingdom; singular neuter genitive from rēgnūm,
certāmine: struggle, fight; singular neuter ablative from	rēgnī
certāmen, certāminis	reliqui: remaining; plural neuter ablative from reliquum,
clārissima: very clear, very famous; singular feminine	reliqui
nominative from clārus, clāra -um, clārior -or -us,	remeāre: to come back, return; present infinitive from remeō,
clārissimus -a -um	remeāre, remeāvī, remeātus
cooperat: he had seized (based on context and etymology), he	repūgnandi: fighting back; singular masculine genitive gerund
had started; 3rd person singular pluperfect active from	from repūgnō, repūgnāre, repūgnāvī, repūgnātus
coepio, coepere, coepi, coepitus	rērum: of things; plural feminine genitive from rēs, rēi
concorditer: harmoniously, amicably (adverb)	rēx: king; singular masculine nominative from rēx, rēgis
corde: heart; singular neuter ablative from cor, cordis	Rōmae: of Rome; singular feminine genitive from Rōma, Rōmae
cūnctis: all, whole; plural ablative from cūnctus, cūncta,	rota: wheel; singular feminine nominative from rota, rotae
cūnctum	sancta: holy
cupiēns: desiring; singular nominative present participle from	sēcum: with oneself
cupiō, cupere, cupiū, cupiūtus	sēdēs: lands; plural feminine accusative from sēdēs, sēdis
cursu: course; singular neuter ablative from currō, currere,	sēsē: himself
cucurī, cursus	sibi: to himself; singular dative of se
dēdīta: having been surrendered; singular feminine nominative	subāctum: having been subjugated, conquered; singular neuter
perfect passive participle from dēdō, dēdere, dēdidi,	nominative perfect passive participle from subigō,
dēdītus	subigere, subēgī, subāctus
dispositi: having been arranged, distributed; plural ablative	supplicib⁹: suppliant; plural masculine ablative adjective from
perfect passive participle from dispōnō, dispōnere,	supplex, supplicis
disposui, dispositus	tālī: such
disposit⁹: he arranged, distributed; 3rd person singular perfect	tempore: time, period; singular neuter ablative from tempus,
active from dispōnō, dispōnere, disposui, dispositus	temporis
dūcēns: leading; singular nominative present participle from	Ticinēnum: residents of Pavia a.k.a. Ticinum, capital of the
dūcō, dūcere, dūxi, ductus	Kingdom of the Lombards from 572 to 774.
eius: his/her/its	Ticinum: Pavia a.k.a. Ticinum, capital of the Kingdom of the
etēnīm: because	Lombards from 572 to 774.
ex: out of, from	trādiderat: they had handed over; 3rd person plural pluperfect
exemplō: sample, model, copy; singular neuter ablative from	active from trādō, trādere, trādidi, trādītus
exemplum, exemplī	tum: then
fessa: tired; singular feminine nominative from fessus, fessa,	urbs: city; singular feminine nominative from urbs, urbis
fessum	urbēs: cities; plural feminine nominative from urbs, urbis
Francis: the Franks	variō: various, diverse; singular masculine ablative from varius,
fuerat: he had been; 3rd person singular pluperfect active from	varia, varium
sum, esse, fui, futūrus	videās: you may see; 2nd person singular present active
haec: this; singular feminine nominative from hic, haec, hoc	subjunctive from video, vidēre, vidī, visus
hīc: here;	vīrēs: strength; plural feminine accusative from vis, viris
huius: of this; singular genitive of hic, haec, hoc	vītāe: of life; singular feminine genitive from vīta, vītāe
hūmanārum: human; plural feminine genitive from hūmānus,	volvītūr: it is rolled; 3rd person singular present passive from
hūmāna -um, hūmānior -or -us, hūmānissimus -a -um	volvo, volvere, volvi, volutus
iam: already, now, soon	vōtīs: vows; plural neuter ablative from vōtūm, vōtī
illīc: there	
italiae: Italy (genitive or locative case)	
iter: journey, trip; singular neuter accusative from iter, itineris	
iūgī: continuous; singular feminine ablative from iūgis, iūge	
iūre: rightly (adverb), according to law	
legiōnibus: legions; plural feminine ablative from legiō, legiōnis	
loca: places; plural neuter accusative from locum, locī	
longō: long, far; singular masculine ablative from longus, longa	
-um, longior -or -us, longissimus -a -um	
lūdībria: mockeries, wantonness; plural neuter accusative from	
lūdībrium, lūdībrii	
memorātūm: the aforementioned (from context), having been	
remembered; singular neuter nominative perfect passive	
participle from memorō, memorāre, memorāvī, memorātus	
nam: for	
noviter: recently	
obsidiōne: seige; singular feminine ablative from obsidiō,	
obsidiōnis	
omnēs: all, every; plural common accusative from omnis, omnīs,	
omne	
ōrandi: praying; singular masculine genitive gerund from ōrō,	
ōrāre, ūrāvī, ūrātus	
paternās: paternal; plural feminine accusative from paternus,	
paterna, paternū	
perāctūs: having been carried through; plural ablative perfect	
passive participle from peragō, peragere, perēgī, perāctus	
petītū: he sought for; 3rd person singular perfect active from	
petō, petere, petīvī, petītus	
populūm: people, populace; singular masculine accusative from	
populus, populū	
potuit: he was able; 3rd person singular perfect active from	
possum, posse, potul, -	
premendum: pressing, overwhelming, oppressing; singular	
neuter nominative gerund from premō, premere, pressī,	

Hesternō Dēsideriūs diadēmate rēgnī
Flōruit, ēn hodiē¹ est pauper, captīvus et exul.
Filius illīus, cognōmine dictus Adalgīs,
Cum Langōbardīs in eō spēs ampla manēret,
Diffidēns rēbus patriae, sē contulit inde
Ad Cōnstantīnum, Grēcōrum scēptra regentem²;
Ā quō patricius³ praeclārō mūnere factus,
Hoc in honōre suae permānsit ad ultima vītae.
Rēx autem Carolus veniēns, dum⁴ cognitus eius
Vēlōx adventus nec dum Saxōnibus esset,
Fēcerat, ut triplex exercitus in regiōnēs
Illōrum missus, multīs afflīgeret ipsōs
Cēdibus ac praedīs, loca dēnique plūrima vastāns
Hinc est cum spoliīs victor regressus opīmīs.

¹Yesterday Desiderius flourished in the crown of his kingdom, behold today he is a pauper, captive, and exile. The ē in hodiē elides, giving a scansion of DDSSDT.

²To Constantine, reigning the scepters of the Greeks. Constantine V was the Emporer of the Eastern Roman/Byzantine Empire from 741 to 775 and gave shelter to Adalgis, the son of Desiderius, who fled to Constantinople.

³By whom he (Adalgis) was made (a) patrician with remarkable employment/office.

⁴When his swift advance was not yet known to the Saxons.

ā: from, out of, by, since	patricius: patrician; singular masculine nominative from patricius, patricii
ac: and	
ad: to, towards, at, according to	
adventus: arrival, approach; singular masculine nominative from adventus, adventūs	pauper: poor; singular nominative from pauper, pauperis (gen.), pauperior -or -us, pauperrimus -a -um
affligeret: he was striking, throwing down; 3rd person singular imperfect active subjunctive from afflīgō, afflīgere, afflīxi, afflictus	permansit: he remained; 3rd person singular perfect active from permanēō, permanēre, permansi, permansus
Adalgis: Adalgis, son of Desiderius	plūrima: very many; singular feminine nominative from multus, multa -um, plūrimus -a -um
ampla: large; singular feminine nominative from amplus, ampla -um, amplior -or -us, amplissimus -a -um	praeclārō: remarkable; singular neuter ablative from praeclārus, praeclāra, praeclārum
autem: but, however, moreover	praedīs: plunder; plural feminine from praeda, praedae
cēdibus: slaughters; plural feminine ablative variant spelling from caēdēs, caedis	quō: what; singular ablative of quis
captīvus: captive; singular masculine nominative from captīvus, captīvi	rēbus: things; plural feminine ablative from rēs, reī
Carolus: Charlemagne, AD 748-814, King of the Franks and Emperor of the Western Roman Empire, member of the Carolingian Dynasty	regentem: reigning; singular common accusative present participle from regō, regere, rēxī, rēctus
cōgnitus: having been known; singular masculine nominative perfect passive participle from cognosco, cognoscere, cognovi, cognitus	rēgōnēs: regions; plural feminine accusative from regiō, regiōnis
cōgnōmīne: name, surname; singular neuter ablative from cōgnōmen, cōgnōminis	rēgnī: of the kingdom; singular neuter genitive from rēgnū, rēgnī
Cōnstantīnū: Constantine V, Emperor of the Byzantine Empire from 741 to 775; singular masculine accusative from Constantinus, Cōnstantīni	regressus: regressus est = he returned; singular masculine nominative perfect participle from regredior, regredi, regressus sum
contulit: he brought together; 3rd person singular perfect active from cōferō, cōferre, contulī, collātus	rēx: king; singular masculine nominative from rēx, rēgis
cum: with	Saxonibus: the Saxons
dēnique: finally	scēptrā: scepters; plural neuter nominative from scēptrum, scēptrī
Dēsiderius: King Desiderius, final King of the Lombards (720-786)	se: himself
diadēmātē: diadem, crown; singular neuter ablative from diadēma, diadēmatis	spēs, spei: hope; singular feminine nominative from spēs, spei
dictus: having been said; singular masculine nominative perfect passive participle from dicō, dicere, dīxi, dictus	spoliūs: spoils, booty; plural neuter ablative from spolium, spoliū
diffidēns: despairing (of); singular nominative present participle from diffido, diffidere, diffisus sum	suae: her; singular feminine gen. or dat. or plural feminine nom. or voc. from suus
dum: while, as long as, until	trīplex: triple; singular nominative from trīplex, (gen.), trīplicis
eiūs: his/her/its	ultīma: end, farthest, last; singular feminine nominative from -, -
ēn: behold!	ut: so that
eō: with him; singular masculine ablative from is, ea, id	vāstāns: ravaging, devastating; singular nominative present participle from vāstō, vāstāre, vāstāvī, vāstātus
esset: it was; 3rd person singular imperfect active subjunctive from sum, esse, fūi, futūrus	vēlōx: quick; singular masculine nominative from vēlōx, vēlōcis (gen.), vēlōcior -or -us, vēlōcissimus -a -um
est: he is; 3rd person singular present active from sum, esse, fūi, futūrus	veniēns: coming; singular nominative present participle from veniō, venire, vēnī, ventus
et: and	victor: victor; singular masculine nominative from victor, victōris
exercitus: army; singular masculine accusative from exercitus, exercitūs	vītāe: of life; singular feminine genitive from vīta, vītāe
exul: exile, wanderer; singular common nominative from exul, exulis	
factus: having been made; singular masculine nominative perfect passive participle from faciō, facere, fēcī, factus	
fēcerat: he had done; 3rd person singular pluperfect active from faciō, facere, fēcī, factus	
filius: son; singular masculine nominative from filius, filī	
flōrūt: he flourished; 3rd person singular perfect active from flōrēō, flōrēre, flōrūi, -	
Grēcōrum: Greek; plural masculine genitive from grēcus, grēca, grēcum	
hesternō: yesterday; singular masculine ablative from hesternus, hesterna, hesternum	
hinc: from here	
hoc: this; singular neuter nominative from hic, haec, hoc	
hodiē: today	
honore: honor; singular masculine ablative from honor, honōris	
illīus: of that; singular genitive from ille, illa, illud	
illōrum: of those; plural masculine or neuter genitive from ille, illa, illud	
in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)	
inde: from there, since	
ipsōs: themselves	
Langōbardis: the Lombards	
loca: places; plural neuter accusative from locum, locī	
manēret: it remained; 3rd person singular imperfect active subjunctive from maneō, manēre, mānsi, mānsus	
missus: missus est = was sent, est is omitted for metrical reasons; singular masculine nominative perfect passive participle from mittō, mittere, mīsi, missus	
multīs: many; plural ablative from multus, multa -um, -, plūrimus -a -um	
mūnērē: employment, office; singular neuter ablative from mūnus, mūneris	
nec: nor, not either	
opīmis: well-fed, fat, fertile; plural ablative from opīmus, opīma, opīmūm	
patriae: fatherland; singular feminine genitive from patria, patriae	

Annō 775.

Rēx hiemis tempus dūcēns¹ in Cārisiācō,
Nōmine quō quēdam rēgālis vīlla vocātur,
Illūc Francōrum procerēs tōtumque senātum
Convocat, ac multum tractāns² dē rēbus agendīs,
Et variīs³, quibus indiguit rēs pūblica, cūrīs,
Inprīmīs hoc cōnsilium perhibētur inīsse,
Ut iugiter bellum Saxonibus ingererētur⁴,
Quōs expertus⁵ erat fideī vel foederis omnis
Immemorēs, nunquam sub pāce quiēscere velle.
Hinc statuit, requiēs⁶ illīs ut nūlla darētur,
Dōnec gentīlī⁷ rītū cultūque relictō,
Christicolae fierent, aut dēlērentur in aevum.
Ō pietās benedicta Deī, quae vult genus omne
Hūmānum fierī salvum, quia nōverat huius
Nōn aliter⁸ gentīs mollīrī pectora posse,
Disceret ut cervīx reflectere dūra rigōrem
Ingenitum, mītīque iugō sē subdere Christī.

¹The king, leading/spending the time of winter in Carisiacus.

²And treating much of the things to be done.

³And with various cares, which the state needed.

⁴That continuously war with the Saxons might be waged. The subjunctive is used because this is a purpose clause; the imperfect tense of *ingererētur* doesn't really matter for translation. There must be a short *u* on *iūgiter* to fit the meter.

⁵(Charlemagne) had experienced them (the Saxons) (to be) unmindful of faith or every treaty.

⁶That no rest be given to them.

⁷Until, heathen ritual and cult having been left, they might have become Christian, or have been destroyed forever.

⁸Who knew the chests/hearts of this people (the Saxons) could not otherwise be softened, that (their) stiff neck might learn to turn back their innate stiffness, and subdue itself to the gentle yoke of Christ. Note the Saxon Poet's expressed thankfulness to the forced conversion of his people.

ac: and	from nōscō, nōscere, nōvī, nōtus
aevum: into eternity; singular neuter accusative from aevum, aevī	nūlla: no, none, not any; singular feminine nominative from nūllus, nūlla, nūllum (gen -ius)
agendīs: to be done; plural ablative future passive participle from agō, agere, ēgī, āctus	nunquam: never
aliter: otherwise	o: O; interjection
annō: year; singular masculine ablative from annus, annī	omne: all, every; singular neuter accusative from omnis, omnis, omne
aut: or	omnis: all, every; singular common nominative from omnis, omnis, omne
bellum: battle, war; singular neuter nominative from bellum, bellī	pāce: peace; singular feminine ablative from pāx, pācis
benedicta: blessed; singular feminine nominative perfect passive participle from benedīcō, benedicere, benedīxī, benedictus	pectora: chests; plural neuter nominative from pectus, pectoris
Cārīsiācō: the name of a villa	perhibētū: it is asserted; 3rd person singular present passive from perhibeō, perhibēre, perhibū, perhibitus
cervīx: neck; singular feminine nominative from cervīx, cervīcīs	pietās: dutiful conduct, piety; singular feminine nominative from pietās, pietātis
Christī: Christ; singular masculine genitive from Christus, Christī	posse: to be able; person present active from possum, posse, potū, -
Christicolaē: Christians	procerēs: noblemen; plural masculine nominative from procer, proceris
cōnsilium: plan, advice, council; singular neuter nominative from consilium, consiliū	pūblica: public; singular feminine nominative from pūblicus, pūblica, pūblicum
convocat: he calls together, assembles; 3rd person singular present active from convocō, convocāre, convocātū, convocātus	quae: who; plural female nom. or neuter nom. or acc. of quis
cultū: cult; singular neuter ablative from colō, colere, coluī, cultus	quia: because
cūris: cares; singular feminine ablative from cura, curae	quibus: what; plural dative or ablative of qui
dareūt: might be given; 3rd person singular imperfect passive subjunctive from dō, dare, dedī, datus	quiēscere: to rest; present infinitive from quiēscō, quiēscere, quiēvī, quiētūs
dē: of, from, away from, down from	quō: what; singular ablative of quis
Deī: god, diety; singular masculine genitive from Deus, Dei	quōs: who; plural masculine accusative of quis
dēlērentur: they might be erased/destroyed; 3rd person plural imperfect passive subjunctive from dēleō, dēlēre, dēlēvī, dēlētūs	rēbus: things; plural feminine ablative from rēs, reī
dīscret: it might learn; 3rd person singular imperfect active subjunctive from dīscō, dīscere, dīdicī, dīscitus	reflectere: to bend back; present infinitive from reflectō, reflectere, reflexī, reflexus
dōnec: until	rēgālis: regal, royal; singular common nominative from rēgālis, rēgālis, rēgāle
dūcēs: leading; singular nominative present participle from dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, dūctus	relictō: having been left behind; singular masculine ablative perfect passive participle from relinquo, relinquere, reliqui, relictus
dūra: hard, stiff; singular feminine nominative from dūrus, dūra -um, dūrior -or -us, dūrissimus -a -um	requiēs: rest, repose; singular feminine nominative from requiēs, requiētūs
et: and	rēs: things; singular feminine nominative from rēs, reī
expertūs: expertus erat = he had experienced; singular masculine nominative perfect participle from experior, experīrī, expertus	rēx: king; singular masculine nominative from rēx, rēgis
fideī: faith; singular feminine genitive from fidēs, fideī	rigōrem: rigor, roughness; singular masculine accusative from rigor, rigōris
fierēt: they might become; 3rd person plural imperfect active subjunctive from fiō, fierī, factus sum	rītū: rite, ceremony; singular masculine ablative from rītus, rītūs
fieri: to become; infinitive from fiō, fierī, factus sum	salvum: healthy, safe; singular neuter nominative from salvus, salva, salvum
foederis: treaty; singular neuter genitive from foedus, foederis	Saxonibus: the Saxons (ablative case)
Francōrum: of the Franks	sē: himself
gentili: heathen, pagan; singular masculine ablative from gentilis, gentilis	senātū: senate; singular masculine accusative from senātus, senātūs
gentis: of the people, clan, nation; singular feminine genitive from gēns, gentis	statuit: he decided; 3rd person singular present active from statuō, statuere, statuī, statūtus
genus: type, family, offspring; singular neuter accusative from genus, generis	sub: below, under
hiemis: of winter; singular feminine genitive from hiemps, hiemis	subdēre: to place under; infinitive from subdō, subdere, subdidi, subditus
hīnc: from here	tempus: time, period; singular neuter accusative from tempus, temporis
hoc: this; singular neuter nominative from hic, haec, hoc	tōtūm: whole, total; singular neuter accusative from tōtus, tōta, tōtūm (gen -ius)
huius: of this; singular genitive of hic, haec, hoc	tractāns: discussing, handling, trying; singular nominative present participle from tractō, tractāre, tractāvī, tractātūs
hūmānū: human; singular neuter nominative from hūmānus, hūmāna -um, hūmānior -or -us, hūmānissimus -a -um	ut: so that
illīs: those; plural dative or ablative from ille, illa, illud	variūs: various, diverse; plural ablative from varius, varia, varium
illūc: over there	vel: or
immemorēs: unmindful, forgetful; plural common nominative from immemor, (gen.), immemoris	velle: to want;
in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)	villa: farm, villa; singular feminine nominative from villa, villae
indiguit: it lacked; 3rd person singular perfect active from indigeō, indigere, indigū, -	vocātūr: it is called; 3rd person singular present passive from vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātūs
ingenitū: innate, in-born; singular neuter nominative perfect passive participle from ingignō, ingignere, ingenuī, ingenitus	vult: he wants; singular 3rd person present from volō, velle, voluī (irr.)
ingererētū: it might be waged; 3rd person singular imperfect passive subjunctive from ingerō, ingerere, ingessī, ingestus	
inīsse: to have undertaken; perfect active infinitive from inēō, inīre, inivī(ii), initus	
inprimīs: above all	
iūgiter: continually (adverb)	
iugō: yoke; singular neuter ablative from jugum, jugi	
mītī: soft, mild, gentle; singular ablative from mītis, mīte, mītior -or -us, mītissimus -a -um	
mollīrī: to be softened, weakened; passive infinitive from molliō, mollīre, mollīvī, mollītūs	
multūm: many; singular neuter accusative from multus, multa -um, -, plurīmus -a -um	
nōmīne: name; singular neuter ablative from nōmen, nōminis	
nōn: not	
nōverat: he had known; 3rd person singular pluperfect active	

Ob¹ hōc doctōrem tālem fideīque magistrum,
Scīlicet īsignem Carolum dōnāvit eīsdem,
Quī bellō premeret², quōs nōn ratiōne domāret,
Sīcque vel invītōs salvārī³ cōgeret ipsōs.

Hoc īspīrātum cordī dīvīnitus eius
Ūtile⁴ cōnsilium comitantur strēnua facta.

Quippe ducēs omnisque simul dēlēcta iuventūs
Ad Duriam vīcum properant: nam rēge iubente
Illīc conventus populī generālis habētur.

Atque dehinc grandī trānsmissō flūmine Rhēnō,
Saxōnum Carolus finēs hostīliter intrat

Ac prīmō Sigiburg castellum coepit, et inde
Ērēsburg petiit, quam captam dīximus⁵ urbem.

Sed nē⁶ praesidiō Francīs fore posset, eandem
Indigenē dēstrūxērunt: hanc dēnique rūrsus
Mūnīvit, posuitque suās illīc legiōnēs;

Inde gradū celerī Wisuram pervēnit ad amnem.

¹From this (reason) (God) gave such a learned man and captain of the faith, indeed the distinguished Charlegmange, to the same (people, the Saxons).

²Who would press by war those he (could) not subdue by reason.

³And thus the unwilling he would force to be saved themselves.

⁴This beneficial plan, having been divinely inspired to his heart, strenuous deeds accompany (it).

⁵Which we said was the captured city. See page 12 for the initial capture of Eresburg.

⁶But so that it might not be for the protection of the Franks, the indigenous (people, the Saxons), had destroyed (the fortifications of Eresburg).

ac: and	mūnīvit: he fortified; 3rd person singular perfect active from mūniō, mūnire, mūnīvi, mūnitus
ad: to, towards, at, according to	nam: yes, truly
amnem: river; singular masculine accusative from amnis, amnis	nē: not
atque: and	nōn: not
bellō: battle, war; singular neuter ablative from bellum, bellī	ob: for, because of, towards
captam: having been taken; singular feminine accusative	omnis: all, every; singular common nominative from omnis, omnis, omne
perfect passive participle from capiō, capere, cēpī, captus	pervēnit: he arrived; 3rd person singular present active from perveniō, pervenire, pervēnī, perventus
Carolus: Charlemagne, AD 748-814, King of the Franks and	petīvit: he asked for; 3rd person singular perfect active from petō, petere, petīvī, petitus
Emperor of the Western Roman Empire, member of the	populi: people, populace; singular masculine genitive from populus, populi
Carolingian Dynasty	posset: it might have been able; 3rd person singular imperfect active subjunctive from possum, posse, potuī, -
Carolus: Charlemagne, AD 748-814, King of the Franks and	posuit: he put; 3rd person singular perfect active from pōnō, pōnere, posui, positus
Emperor of the Western Roman Empire, member of the	praesidiō: defence; singular neuter ablative from praesidium, praesidiū
Carolingian Dynasty	premeret: he pressed, overwhelmed; 3rd person singular imperfect active subjunctive from premō, premere, pressī, pressus
castellum: castle, stronghold; singular neuter nominative from castellum, castelli	priō: first; singular masculine ablative from pīmus, pīma, pīnum
celeri: quick; singular ablative from celer, celeris -e, celerior -or -us, celerrimus -a -um	properant: they hurry; 3rd person plural present active from properō, properare, properāvī, properātus
coepit: he started; 3rd person singular present active from coepio, coepere, coepi, coepitus	quam: how? how much?
cōgeret: he might force; 3rd person singular imperfect active subjunctive from cōgō, cōgere, cōgī, cōactus	quī: who; plural masculine nominative of quis
comitantur: they accompany; 3rd person plural active deponent from comitor, comitārī, comitatus	quippe: indeed, surely, the thing is
cōnsilium: plan, advice, council; singular neuter accusative from cōsiliū, cōsili(i)	quōs: who; plural masculine accusative of quis
conventus: assembly, coming together; singular feminine nominative from conventus, conventūs	rationē: reason; singular feminine ablative from ratiō, ratiōnis
cordi: heart; singular neuter dative from cor, cordis	rēgē: king; singular masculine ablative from rēx, rēgis
dehinc: from now on, from this place	Rhēnō: the Rhine; singular masculine ablative from Rhēnus, Rhēnī
dēlēcta: having been chosen; singular feminine nominative past passive participle from dēlīgo, dēligere, dēlēgī, dēlēctum	rūrsus: again
dēnique: thereafter, finally	salvārī: to be saved; present passive infinitive from salvō, salvāre, salvāvī, salvātus
dēstrēunt: they destroyed; 3rd person plural perfect active from dēstruō, dēstruere, dēstrūxī, dēstrūctus	Saxōnum: of the Saxons
dīvīnitus: divinely, of heaven (adverb)	scīlicet: really
dīximus: we said; 1st person plural perfect active from dīcō, dīcere, dīxī, dīctus	sed: but
doctōrem: teacher, instructor; singular masculine accusative from doctor, doctōris	sīc: thus
domāret: he subdued, tamed; 3rd person singular imperfect active subjunctive from domō, domāre, domū, domitus	Sigiburg: A Saxon hillfort in Western Germany
dōnāvit: he gave; 3rd person singular perfect active from dōnō, dōnāre, dōnāvī, dōnātus	simul: at the same time as
ducēs: leaders; plural masculine nominative from dux, ducis	strēnūa: brisk, vigorous; plural neuter nominative from strēnūus, strēnūa, strēnūum
Duriām: Dūren, a town in North Rhine-Westphalia, Germany	suās: their; plural accusative feminine of suus
eādem: singular feminine accusative from idēm, eadem, idem	tālēm: such; singular common accusative from tālis, tālis, tāle
eīs: to them; plural dative or ablative from is, ea, id	trānsmīssō: having been sent; singular masculine ablative perfect passive participle from trānsmītō, trānsmittere, trānsmīsi, trānsmīssus
eiūs: his/her/its	urbēm: city; singular feminine accusative from urbs, urbis
Frēsburg: a Saxon refuge castle near modern-day Obermarsberg	ūtīlē: usefully; adverb from ūtīlis, ūtīlis, ūtīle
et: and	vel: or
facta: deeds; plural neuter nominative from factum, factī	vicūm: village; singular masculine accusative from vīcūs, vīcī
fidei: of faith; singular feminine genitive from fidēs, fidei	Wisuram: the River Weser, the second longest river in Germany
finēs: boundaries, ends, limits; plural common accusative from finis, finis	
flūmine: river; singular neuter ablative from flūmen, flūminis	
fore: to be; future active infinitive from sum, esse, fui, fūrūs	
Francīs: the Franks	
generālis: general; singular common genitive from generālis, generāle	
gradū: step; singular masculine ablative from gradus, gradūs	
grandi: great, grand, imposing; singular ablative from grandis, grandis, grande	
habētur: it is had; 3rd person singular present passive from habēō, habēre, habuī, habitus	
hanc: this; singular feminine accusative of hic, haec, hoc	
hōc: this; sing. masc. or neut. abl. of hic, haec, hoc	
hostiliter: in a hostile manner (adverb)	
illīc: there	
inde: from there, since	
indigēnē: by the natives, denizens; adverbial form of indigenus, indigenī	
īnsignēm: distinguished; singular common accusative from īnsignis, īnsignis, īsignē	
īspīrātūm: having been inspired; singular neuter accusative perfect passive participle from īspīrō, īspīrāre, īspīrāvī, īspīrātus	
intrat: he entered; 3rd person singular present active from intrō, intrāre, intrāvī, intrātus	
invītōs: unwilling; plural masculine accusative from invītus, invīta, invītum	
ipsōs: themselves;	
iūbētē: commanding; singular ablative present participle from iubeō, iubēre, iussī, iussum	
iuventūs: youth; singular feminine nominative from juventus, juventus	
legiōnēs: legions; plural feminine accusative from legiō, legiōnis	
magistrum: teacher; singular masculine accusative from magister, magistri	

Cui iuxta montem quī Brūnesberg vocitātur,
 Obvia¹ magna fuit cupiēns obsistere turba,
 Nē fluvium trānsīret, et hōc cōnāmine cassō.
 Fugit enim pīmō statim certāmine pulsā,
 Innumerōsque diē ferrum prōstrāverat illō.
 Inde movēns Carolus regiōnēs vēnit ad illās,
 Quās Osterliudī retinent, sēditque locātīs
 Ad fluvium castrīs, quī nunc Ōvaccra vocātur.
 Tunc illī quīdam², quī dē pīmōribus eius
 Gentis erat, supplex occurrit nōmine Hessī;
 Partis et illīus pariter plēbs obvia tōta
 Vēnerat, obsidibusque datīs quōs³ iusserat ipse,
 Sē servāre fidem rēgī per maxima spondent
 Iūrāmenta. Quibus⁴ cūnctīs hōc ūrdine gestīs,
 In pāgum rediit, quem dīcunt nōmine Bukkī.
 Illīc occurrēre ducēs simul Angariōrum
 Cum populō, similīque modō rēgālibus omnēs
 Dum pārent⁵ iussīs, iūrāmentīsque fidēlēs
 Sē fore cōfirmant, redditum parat īlico victor.

¹*In the way was a large crowd desirous of resisting, that he might not cross over the river, and, in vain battle, it fled having immediatey with the first blow of battle, and countless on that day the sword had laid low in that (place).*

²*Then there a certain (man) named Hessi, who was of the prominent men of his people, ran (up to Charlemagne as a) supplicant.*

³*And the hostages having been given which he (Charlemagne) himself had ordered.*

⁴*With all these things having been set in this order.*

⁵*And in a similar way while all obeyed the royal commands, and with oaths confirmed to him to be faithful, the victor (Charlemagne) immediately prepared to return (to his homeland). parent takes the dative instead of the accusative, which is why iussīs rēgālibus is in the dative.*

ad: to, towards, at, according to	nōmine: name; singular neuter ablative from <i>nōmen</i> , <i>nōminis</i>
Angariōrum: of the Angarians, a Saxon tribe	nunc: now
Brūnesberg: the name of a mountain or hill in Saxony	obsidibus: hostages; plural common ablative from <i>obses</i> , <i>obsidis</i>
Bukki: possibly Breisgau, a region in Germany	obsistere: to oppose, resist, withstand; present active infinitive from <i>obsistō</i> , <i>obsistere</i> , <i>obstī</i> , <i>obstitus</i>
Carolus: Charlemagne, AD 748-814, King of the Franks and Emperor of the Western Roman Empire, member of the Carolingian Dynasty	obvia: in the way; hostile; singular feminine nominative from <i>obvius</i> , <i>obvia</i> , <i>obvium</i>
cassō: hollow, vain, useless; singular masculine ablative from <i>cassus</i> , <i>cassa</i> , <i>cassum</i>	occurrēre: they ran; 3rd person plural perfect alternative to <i>occurrērunt</i> from <i>occurrō</i> , <i>occurrere</i> , <i>occurrī</i> / <i>occucurrī</i> , <i>occursus</i>
castris: forts; plural neuter ablative from <i>castrum</i> , <i>castrī</i>	occurrit: he ran; 3rd person singular perfect from <i>occurrō</i> , <i>occurrere</i> , <i>occurrī</i> / <i>occucurrī</i> , <i>occursus</i>
certāmine: contest, struggle; singular neuter ablative from <i>certāmen</i> , <i>certaminis</i>	omnēs: all, every; plural common nominative from <i>omnis</i> , <i>omnis</i> , <i>omne</i>
cōnāmine: effort, struggle; singular neuter ablative from <i>cōnāmen</i> , <i>cōnāminis</i>	ōrdine: order; singular masculine ablative from <i>ōrdō</i> , <i>ōrdinis</i>
cōfirmant: they confirmed, affirmed; 3rd person plural present active from <i>cōfirmō</i> , <i>cōfirmāre</i> , <i>cōfirmāvī</i> , <i>cōfirmātūs</i>	Osterliudi: Another name of the Eastphalians
cui: to whom; singular dative from <i>quis</i>	Ovacra: probably the Oker River, a tributary of the River Aller, in Lower Saxony
cum: with	pāgum: district, region; singular masculine accusative from <i>pāgus</i> , <i>pāgi</i>
cūnctis: all, whole; plural ablative from <i>cūnctus</i> , <i>cūncta</i> , <i>cūnctum</i>	parat: he prepares; 3rd person singular present active from <i>parō</i> , <i>parāre</i> , <i>parāvī</i> , <i>parātūs</i>
cupiēns: desiring; singular nominative present participle from <i>cupiō</i> , <i>cupere</i> , <i>cupiū</i> , <i>cupitūs</i>	pārent: they obey; 3rd person plural present active from <i>pāreō</i> , <i>pārēre</i> , <i>pārūi</i> , <i>pāritūrus</i>
datis: having been giving; plural ablative past passive participle from <i>dō</i> , <i>dare</i> , <i>dēdi</i> , <i>datus</i>	pariter: together, likewise
dē: of, from, away from, down from	partis: region, faction; singular feminine genitive from <i>parts</i> , <i>partis</i>
dicunt: they say; 3rd person plural present active from <i>dicō</i> , <i>dicere</i> , <i>dixi</i> , <i>dictus</i>	per: through
die: day; singular common ablative from <i>diēs</i> , <i>diēi</i>	plēbs: common people; singular feminine nominative from <i>plēbs</i> , <i>plēbis</i>
ducēs: leaders; plural masculine nominative from <i>dux</i> , <i>ducis</i>	populō: peoples, populaces; singular masculine ablative from <i>populus</i> , <i>populi</i>
dum: while, as long as, until	prīmo: first; singular masculine ablative from <i>prīmus</i> , <i>prīma</i> , <i>prīmū</i>
eius: his/her/its	prīmoribus: chiefs, nobles; plural ablative from <i>prīmoris</i> , <i>prīmoris</i> , <i>prīmore</i>
enim: for, truly, really, indeed	prostrāverat: it had struck down; 3rd person singular pluperfect active from <i>prosternō</i> , <i>prosternere</i> , <i>prostrāvī</i> , <i>prostrātūs</i>
erat: he was; 3rd person singular imperfect active from <i>sum</i> , <i>esse</i> , <i>fūi</i> , <i>futūrus</i>	pulsā: having been hit; singular feminine ablative perfect passive participle from <i>pellō</i> , <i>pellere</i> , <i>peplū</i> , <i>pulsus</i>
et: and	quās: which; plural female accusative of <i>quis</i>
ferrum: sword; singular neuter nominative from <i>ferrum</i> , <i>ferri</i>	quēm: which; singular masculine accusative of <i>qui</i>
fidēlēs: faithful persons, confidants; plural common nominative from <i>fidelis</i> , <i>fidele</i> , <i>fidelior</i> -or -us, <i>fidelissimus</i> -a -um	quī: which; plural masculine nominative of <i>quis</i>
fidem: faith; singular feminine accusative from <i>fidēs</i> , <i>fidei</i>	quībus: with which; plural ablative of <i>qui</i>
fluvium: river; singular masculine accusative from <i>fluvius</i> , <i>fluvī</i>	quōs: which; plural masculine accusative of <i>quis</i>
fore: to be; future active infinitive from <i>sum</i> , <i>esse</i> , <i>fūi</i> , <i>futūrus</i>	reditum: return; singular masculine accusative from <i>reditus</i> , <i>reditūs</i>
fugit: it (the crowd) fled; 3rd person singular perfect active from <i>fugiō</i> , <i>fugere</i> , <i>fūgi</i> , <i>fugitus</i>	redīvit: he returned; 3rd person singular perfect active from <i>redeō</i> , <i>redire</i> , <i>redīvī</i> (ii), <i>reditus</i>
fuit: he was; 3rd person singular perfect active from <i>sum</i> , <i>esse</i> , <i>fūi</i> , <i>futūrus</i>	rēgālibus: regal, royal; plural dative from <i>rēgālis</i> , <i>rēgālis</i> , <i>rēgāle</i>
gentis: of the people, clan, nation; singular feminine genitive from <i>gēns</i> , <i>gentis</i>	rēgi: king; singular masculine dative from <i>rēx</i> , <i>rēgis</i>
gestis: having been carried out; plural ablative perfect passive participle from <i>gerō</i> , <i>gerere</i> , <i>gessī</i> , <i>gestus</i>	rēgiōnēs: regions; plural feminine accusative from <i>regiō</i> , <i>regiōnis</i>
Hessi: the name of a man sent to Charlemagne to negotiate peace	retinēt: they retain; 3rd person plural present active from <i>retineō</i> , <i>retinēre</i> , <i>retinūi</i> , <i>retentus</i>
hōc: this; singular neuter ablative of <i>hic</i> , <i>haec</i> , <i>hoc</i>	sē: himself
īlico: immediately (adverb). Usually spelled <i>īlicō</i> ; however the o must be short here to fit the meter.	sēdit: he encamped; 3rd person singular perfect active from <i>sedeō</i> , <i>sedēre</i> , <i>sēdī</i> , <i>sessus</i>
illās: those; plural feminine accusative from <i>ille</i> , <i>illa</i> , <i>illud</i>	servārē: to maintain, preserve; present active infinitive from <i>servō</i> , <i>servārē</i> , <i>servāvī</i> , <i>servātūs</i>
illi: to that one (Charlemagne); from <i>ille</i> , <i>illa</i> , <i>illud</i> . Alternatively: there, belonging to that party (adverb)	simili: similar; singular ablative from <i>similis</i> , <i>simile</i> , <i>similiōr</i> -or -us, <i>simillimus</i> -a -um
illīcī: there	simul: at the same time as
illīus: of that; singular genitive from <i>ille</i> , <i>illa</i> , <i>illud</i>	spondēt: they promise; 3rd person plural present active from <i>spondeo</i> , <i>spondere</i> , <i>spepondi</i> , <i>sponsus</i>
illō: that; singular masculine or neuter ablative from <i>ille</i> , <i>illa</i> , <i>illud</i>	statim: immediately
in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)	supplex: suppliant; singular masculine nominative from <i>supplex</i> , <i>supplicis</i>
inde: from there, since	tōta: whole, total; singular feminine nominative from <i>tōtus</i> , <i>tōta</i> , <i>tōtūm</i> (gen -ius)
innumerōs: countless; plural masculine accusative from <i>innumerus</i> , <i>innumera</i> , <i>innumerum</i>	trānsīret: he crossed over; 3rd person singular imperfect active subjunctive from <i>trānseō</i> , <i>trānsīre</i> , <i>transīvī</i> (ii), <i>trānsitus</i>
ipse: himself; singular masculine nominative from <i>ipse</i> , <i>ipsa</i> , <i>ipsum</i>	tunc: then
iūrāmenta: oaths; plural neuter accusative from <i>iūrāmentum</i> , <i>iūrāmentī</i>	turba: crowd; singular feminine nominative from <i>turba</i> , <i>turbae</i>
iūrāmentīs: oaths; plural neuter ablative from <i>iūrāmentum</i> , <i>iūrāmentī</i>	vēnerāt: he had come; 3rd person singular pluperfect active from <i>veniō</i> , <i>venire</i> , <i>vēni</i> , <i>ventus</i>
iusserat: he had ordered; 3rd person singular pluperfect from <i>iubeō</i> , <i>iubēre</i> , <i>iussī</i> , <i>iussus</i>	vēnit: he came; 3rd person singular present active from <i>veniō</i> , <i>venire</i> , <i>vēni</i> , <i>ventus</i>
iussiōs: commands, orders; plural dative perfect passive participle from <i>iubeō</i> , <i>iubēre</i> , <i>iussī</i> , <i>iussus</i>	victor: victor; singular masculine nominative from <i>victor</i> , <i>victōris</i>
iuxtā: near, nearly	vocātūr: it is called; 3rd person singular present passive from <i>vocō</i> , <i>vocāre</i> , <i>vocāvī</i> , <i>vocātūs</i>
locātīs: having been stationed; plural ablative from <i>locō</i> , <i>locāre</i> , <i>locāvī</i> , <i>locātūs</i>	vocitātūr: it is called; 3rd person singular present passive from <i>vocitō</i> , <i>vocitāre</i> , <i>vocitāvī</i> , <i>vocitātūs</i>
māgna: large; singular feminine nominative from <i>māgnus</i> , <i>māgna</i> -um, <i>major</i> -or -us, <i>maximus</i> -a -um	
maxima: very big; plural neuter accusative from <i>māgnus</i> , <i>māgna</i> -um, <i>major</i> -or -us, <i>maximus</i> -a -um	
modō: manner, way; singular masculine ablative from <i>modus</i> , <i>modī</i>	
montem: mountain; singular masculine accusative from <i>mōns</i> , <i>montis</i>	
movēns: moving; singular nominative present participle from <i>moveō</i> , <i>movēre</i> , <i>mōvī</i> , <i>mōtūs</i>	
nē: not	

Intereā iuxtā Wisuram dīmissa¹ manēbat
Pars exercitum rēgis, locus ipse vocātur
Hlidbeki, quō castrīs īdem sēdēre locātīs.
Sed male² sēcūrōs rēs prōspera fēcerat illōs,
Quā rēx ūsus erat, cum cūnctīs hostibus esset
Terrōrī, iam tunc audentē resistere nūllō.
Hinc³ erat in castrīs cautēla remissior illīs,
Ut possent nimiā Saxonum fraude nocērī.
Sōl summō coelī prōnus vergēbat⁴ ab axe,
Et vespertīnās iam tendere coepit ad hōrās;

¹Meanwhile, a part of the king's armies, having been left, remained by the Weser River.

²But badly careless the prosperous time had made them, from which the king had experienced, with all the enemies being terrified, now then no one dared to resist. Because of Charlemagne's military success, some of his soldiers became careless.

³Because of this caution was more relaxed in their camp, so that they could be harmed by the excessive fraud of the Saxons.

⁴The sun lay prone from the axis of the highest sky. This means that it was past noon.

ab: from, out of, by, since
 ad: to, towards, at, according to
 audentē: daring; singular ablative present participle from *audeō, audēre, ausus sum*
 axe: axis; singular masculine ablative from *axis, axis*
 castris: forts; plural neuter ablative from *castrum, castrī*
 cautēla: caution; singular feminine nominative from *cautēla, cautēlae*
 coelī: heaven; singular masculine genitive from *coelum, coelī*
 coepit: it started; 3rd person singular present active from *coepio, coopere, coepi, coepitus*
 cum: with
 cūnctis: all, whole; plural ablative from *cūnctus, cūncta, cūnctum*
 dīmissa: having been sent away; singular feminine nominative perfect passive participle from *dīmittō, dīmittere, dīmisi, dīmissus*
 erat: he was; 3rd person singular imperfect active from *sum, esse, fuī, futūrus*
 esset: he (might) have been; 3rd person singular imperfect active subjunctive from *sum, esse, fuī, futūrus*
 et: and
 exercitūm: of armies; plural masculine genitive from *exercitus, exercitūs*
 fēcerat: it had made; 3rd person singular pluperfect active from *faciō, facere, fēcī, factus*
 fraude: fraud; singular feminine ablative from *fraus, fraudis*
 hinc: because, from here
 Hlidbeki: modern-day Lübbecke in North Rhine-Westphalia in Germany
 hōrās: hours, times; plural feminine accusative from *hōra, hōrae*
 hostibus: enemies; plural common ablative from *hostis, hostis*
 īdem: the same
 iam: already, now, soon
 illis: those; plural dative or ablative from *ille, illa, illud*
 illōs: that; plural masculine accusative from *ille, illa, illud*
 in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
 intereā: during
 ipse: itself; singular masculine nominative from *ipse, ipsa, ipsum*
 iuxtā: near, nearly
 locātis: having been stationed; ablative past passive participle from *locō, locāre, locāvī, locātus*
 locus: place; singular masculine nominative from *locus, locī*
 male: in an evil manner (adverb); adverb from *malus, mala -um, peior -or -us, -*
 manēbat: it was remaining; 3rd person singular imperfect active from *maneō, manēre, mānsi, mānsus*
 nimia: excessive, too much; singular feminine ablative from *nimius -a -um*
 nocērī: to be harmed; passive infinitive from *noceō, nocēre, nocuī, nocitus*
 nūllō: no, none, not any; singular masculine ablative from *nūllus, nūlla, nūllum (gen -ius)*
 pars: part; singular feminine nominative from *pars, partis*
 possent: they (might) have had been able; 3rd person plural imperfect active subjunctive from *possum, posse, potuī, -*
 prōnus: prone, sloped; singular masculine nominative from *prōnus, prōna, prōnum*
 prospera: favorable, prosperous; singular feminine nominative from *prosperus, prospera -um, prosperior -or -us, prosperrimus -a -um*
 quā: with which; singular female ablative of *qui*
 quō: in which; singular ablative of *quis*
 rēgis: of the king; singular masculine genitive from *rēx, rēgis*
 remissior: more relaxed, slack; singular common nominative from *remissus, remissa -um, remissior -or -us, remississimus -a -um*
 rēs: thing, fortune; singular feminine nominative from *rēs, reī*
 resistere: to resist; active infinitive from *resistō, resistere, restitī, -*
 rēx: king; singular masculine nominative from *rēx, rēgis*
 Saxōnum: of the Saxons
 sēcūrōs: untroubled, carefree; plural masculine accusative from *sēcūrus, sēcūra, sēcūrum*
 sed: but
 sedēre: to encamp, to sit; infinitive from *sedeō, sedēre, sēdī, sessus*
 sōl: sun; singular masculine nominative from *sōl, sōlis*
 summō: highest, greatest; singular masculine ablative from *summus, summa, sumnum*
 tendere: to draw (near); active infinitive from *tendō, tendere, tetendi, tentus*
 terrōri: terror; singular masculine ablative from *terror, terrōris*
 tunc: then
 ūsus: usus erat = had experienced; singular masculine nominative perfect participle from *ūtor, ūtī, ūsum*
 ut: so that
 vergēbat: it was laying, inclining, sloping; 3rd person singular

imperfect from *vergō, vergere, versī*
 vespertinās: evening; plural feminine accusative from *vespertinus, vespertina, vespertinum*
 vocātū: it is called; 3rd person singular present passive from *vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātus*
 Wisuram: the River Weser, the second longest river in Germany

Tunc ut equīs quīdam¹ dēferrent pābula longē,

Dē castrīs prius² ēgressī pariter rediērunt.

Hīs sē Saxonum quoddam³ permiscuit agmen,

Fingentum⁴ sēmet sociōs animōque fidēlēs.

Tum sē quisque⁵ novō blandē sociābat amīcō,

Hostis quō saevus latuit sub nōmine tēctus.

Adhibitumque fidem verbīs fallācibus auget

Obsequium; cūnctī simul in commūne labōrant,

Pars⁶ subvectat onus viridis simul utraque foenī.

¹Then so that certain (men) might carry fodder from afar for the horses.

²Having gone out previously from camp, they returned together.

³A certain Saxon band joined itself with these.

⁴Feigning to be friends and faithful in spirit.

⁵While each one talked to his 'friend' with new flatteries, in which the savage enemy lay concealed under (a false) name.

⁶And having been invited their obsequiousness increased (the) faith (that the Franks had in the Saxons) with lying words.

⁷Everyone together labored in common, and together each part shouldered the green burden of hay.

adhibitus: having been invited, summoned; singular neuter
 nominative perfect passive participle from *adhibeo*,
 adhibere, *adhibui*, *adhibitus*
 agmen: band, troop; singular neuter nominative from *agmen*,
 agminis
 amīco: friend; singular masculine ablative from *amicus*, *amica*
 -um, *amicior* -or -us, *amicissimus* -a -um
 animō: soul, mind, live; singular masculine ablative from
 animus, *animi*
 auget: it increases; 3rd person singular present active from
 augeō, *augēre*, *auxi*, *auctus*
 blande: flattering; adverb from *blandus*, *blanda* -um, *blandior*
 -or -us, *blandissimus* -a -um
 castris: forts; plural neuter ablative from *castrum*, *castrī*
 commune: jointly, together; singular neuter accusative from
 commūne, *commūnis*
 cūnctī: all, whole; plural masculine nominative from *cūnctus*,
 cūcta, *cūctum*
 dē: of, from, away from, down from
 déferrent: they transferred; 3rd person plural imperfect active
 subjunctive from *dēferō*, *dēferre*, *dētuli*, *dēlātus*
 ēgressī: having gone out; genitive singular perfect passive
 participle from *ēgredior*, *ēgredī*, *egressum* (deponent)
 equī: horses; plural masculine ablative from *equus*, *equī*
 fallācibus: deceitful, misleading; plural ablative from *fallāx*,
 fallācis (gen.), *fallācior* -or -us, *fallācissimus* -a -um
 fidēlēs: faithful persons, confidants; plural common nominative
 from *fidelis*, *fidele*, *fidelior* -or -us, *fidelissimus* -a -um
 fidem: faith; singular feminine accusative from *fides*, *fidei*
 fingētum: feigning; alternative spelling of gerund from *fingō*,
 fingere, *finxi*, *fictus*
 foeni: of hay; singular neuter genitive from *foenum*, *foeni*
 hīs: with these; plural masculine ablative of *hic*, *haec*, *hoc*
 hostis: enemy; singular common nominative from *hostis*, *hostis*
 in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
 labōrant: they labor; 3rd person plural present active from
 labōrō, *labōrāre*, *labōrāvī*, *labōrātus*
 latuit: it lay hidden, it lurked; 3rd person singular perfect active
 from *lateō*, *latēre*, *latui*, -
 longē: long; adverb from *longus*, *longa* -um, *longior* -or -us,
 longissimus -a -um
 nōmine: name; singular neuter ablative from *nōmen*, *nōminis*
 novō: new; singular masculine ablative from *novus*, *nova* -um,
 novior -or -us, *novissimus* -a -um
 obsequium: allegiance, obedience; singular neuter nominative
 from *obsequium*, *obsequiū*
 onus: burden; singular neuter accusative from *onus*, *oneris*
 pābula: food, nourishment; plural neuter accusative from
 pābulum, *pābuli*
 pariter: equally, together
 pars: part; singular feminine nominative from *pars*, *partis*
 permiscuit: it mixed, joined, mingled; 3rd person singular
 perfect active from *permisCEO*, *permiscere*, *permiscui*,
 permixtus
 prius: before
 quī: who; plural masculine nominative of *quis*
 quīdam: certain (men); plural masculine nominative from
 quīdam
 quis: who
 quō: what; singular ablative of *quis*
 quoddam: certain; singular neuter nominative of *quīdam*
 rediērunt: they returned; 3rd person plural perfect active from
 redeō, *redire*, *redivī(II)*, *reditus*
 saevus: furious; singular masculine nominative from *saevus*,
 saeva -um, *saevior* -or -us, *saevissimus* -a -um
 Saxōnum: Saxon, neuter adjective that modifies *agmen*
 sē: himself
 simul: at the same time as
 sociābat: he was allying, socializing; 3rd person singular
 imperfect active from *sociō*, *sociāre*, *sociāvī*, *sociātus*
 sociōs: associates, companions; plural masculine accusative
 from *socius*, *soci(ī)*
 sub: below, under
 subvectat: it conveys; 3rd person singular present active from
 subvectō, *subvectāre*, *subvectāvī*, *subvectātus*
 tēctus: concealed; singular masculine nominative perfect
 passive participle from *tegō*, *tegere*, *tēxī*, *tēctus*
 tum: then
 tunc: then
 ut: so that
 utra: either; singular feminine nominative from *uter*, *utra*, *utrum*
 verbis: words; plural neuter ablative from *verbum*, *verbi*
 viridis: green; singular common accusative from *viridis*, *viridis*,
 viride

Sīc introgressī Francōrum castra dolōsī,
Quod vī nōn poterant, ēgērunt arte; sed ōlim
Est dictum 'Dolus an virtūs, quis in hoste requīrat?'¹

Dēpressōs somnō Francōs īstanter adortī²
Saxonēs, caedem nimiam fēcēre ferōcēs,
Dōnec discussō³ tandem torpōre sopōris,
Quīdam⁴ correptīs obstāre virīliter armīs
Coepērunt, pugnāque dehinc⁵ utcunque remōtā,
Scīlicet ex pactō, quod tunc angustia tālis
Dictābat, hostēs celerī rediēre recursū.

Hīs rēx audītīs illūc properāre satēgit⁶,
Atque satis vēlōx fugientum terga secūtus,
Prōstrāvit multōs auctōrēs crīminis huius.

Hinc ad Westfālhōs vēnit, statimque receptīs
Obsidibus, quōs trādiderant, abscesserat inde.
Ac suscēpit ovāns⁷ redeuntem Francia rēgem.

¹Trickery or virtue, who would ask (regarding these) in an enemy? This is a quote for Virgil's Aeneid, Book 2, line 390. This question is asked rhetorically by Coroebus, a Trojan, during the sack of Troy when he suggests that he and a small band of other Trojans defending Troy (including Aeneas) disguise themselves as Greek soldiers.

²The Saxons instantly attacked the Franks, suppressed with sleep and the ferocious (Saxons) made a very great slaughter.

³Until the numbness of sleep was finally dissipated.

⁴Certain (Frankish soldiers), having manfully taken hold of weapons, began to oppose (the Saxons).

⁵And with the battle somehow withdrawn, really by agreement, that then such a tight situation dictated, the (Saxon) enemies returned (to their villages) with rapid return. It appears that after the Franks woke up and started fighting back that the Saxons had to flee. Perhaps the Franks and Saxons made a truce; however I think it likelier that *scīlicet ex pactō* refers to the Saxon attacker noticing their now-dire situation and deciding together to flee rather than continue fighting.

⁶Having heard these (things), the king hastened to hurry and the sufficiently fast (king) followed the backs of the fleeing (Saxons), and struck down many perpetrators of this crime.

⁷And the rejoicing Franks received their returning king.

abscesserat: he had left; 3rd person singular pluperfect active
 from absēdō, absēdere, abscessi, abscessus
 ac: and
 ad: to, towards, at, according to
 adortū: adortī sunt = they attacked, sunt omitted for metrical
 reasons; singular masculine genitive perfect participle from
 adōrō, adōrī, adortus sum
 an: or? rather?
 angustia: 'tight situation', small space, narrow passage, being
 boxed in; singular feminine nominative from angustia,
 angustiae
 armī: weapons; plural neuter ablative from armum, armī
 arte: art, skill; singular feminine ablative from ars, artis
 atque: and
 auctōrēs: perpetrators, creators, authors; plural common
 accusative from auctor, auctōris
 auditī: having been heard; plural ablative past passive
 participle from audiō, audire, audiū, auditus
 caedēm: slaughter; singular feminine accusative from caedēs,
 caedis
 castra: garrisons, forts, encampments; plural neuter accusative
 from castrum, castrī
 celerī: quick; singular ablative from celer, celeris -e, celerior -or
 -us, celerimus -a -um
 coēpérunt: they started; 3rd person plural perfect from coēpi,
 coēpisse, coēpi, coēptum
 correptis: having been grasped; plural ablative perfect passive
 participle from corripiō, corripere, corripiū, correptus
 crīminis: crimes; singular neuter genitive from crimen, crīminis
 dehinc: from now on, from this place
 dēpressōs: having been suppressed; plural masculine accusative
 perfect passive participle from dēprimō, dēprimere,
 dēpressi, dēpressus
 dictābat: it dictated; 3rd person singular imperfect active from
 dictō, dictāre, dictāvī, dictātūs
 dictum: dictum est = it was said; singular neuter nominative
 perfect passive participle from dicoō, dicere, dixī, dictus
 discussō: having been dissipated, shattered; singular masculine
 ablative perfect passive participle from discutiō, discutere,
 discussī, discussus
 dolōsī: crafty, cunning; plural masculine nominative from
 dolōsus, dolōsa, dolōsum
 dolus: trickery, deception; singular masculine nominative from
 dolus, dolī
 dōnec: while, as long as, until
 ēgērunt: they did, conducted, acted; 3rd person plural perfect
 active from agō, agere, ēgī, āctus
 est: he is; 3rd person singular present active from sum, esse,
 fui, futūrus
 ex: out of, from
 fēcēre: they did, made; 3rd person plural perfect active from
 faciō, facere, fēcī, factus
 ferōcēs: wild, bold, defiant; plural common nominative from
 ferōx, (gen.), ferōcīs
 Francia: the Franks
 Francōrum: of the Franks
 Francos: the Franks
 fugientum: fleeing; plural genitive present participle from fugiō,
 fugere, fūgī, fugitus
 hinc: from here
 hīs: these; plural masculine ablative of hic, haec, hoc
 hostē: enemy; singular common ablative from hostis, hostis
 hostēs: enemies; plural common nominative from hostis, hostis
 huius: of this; singular genitive of hic, haec, hoc
 illūc: over there
 in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
 inde: from there, since
 instanter: instantly, violently (adverb)
 intrōgressi: intrōgressī sunt = they entered, sunt omitted for
 metrical reasons; plural masculine nominative perfect
 participle from intrōgredī, intrōgredī, intrōgressus sum
 multōs: many; plural masculine accusative from multus, multa
 -um, -a -um
 nimiam: too much; singular feminine accusative from nimius,
 nimia, nimium
 nōn: not
 obsidibus: hostages; plural common ablative from obses, obsidis
 obstāre: to oppose; active infinitive from obstō, obstāre, obstī,
 obstātūs
 ōlim: one day, once upon a time
 ovāns: rejoicing; singular nominative present participle from
 ovō, ovāre, ovāvī, ovātus
 pāctō: agreement, bargain; singular neuter ablative from
 pactum, pactī
 poterant: they were able to; 3rd person plural imperfect active
 from possum, posse, potū,-
 properāre: to hurry; present active infinitive from properō,
 properāre, properāvī, properātūs
 prostrāvit: he struck down; 3rd person singular perfect active
 from prosternō, prosternere, prostrāvī, prostrātūs
 pugnā: fight; singular feminine ablative from pugna, pugnāe
 quīdam: certain (men); plural masculine nominative from
 quīdam
 quis: who
 quod: what; singular neuter accusative of qui
 quōs: who; plural masculine accusative of quis
 receptis: having been received; plural ablative perfect passive
 participle from recipiō, recipere, recēpī, receptus
 recursū: return, running back; singular neuter ablative from
 recurso, recurrere, recūrri, recursus
 redeūtem: returning; singular common accusative present
 participle from redeō, redire, redīvī(ii), reditus
 rediere: they returned; 3rd person plural perfect from redeō,
 redire, redīvī(ii), reditus
 rēgem: king; singular masculine accusative from rēx, rēgis
 remōtā: having been removed; singular feminine ablative
 perfect passive participle from removeō, removēre, remōvī,
 remōtūs
 requirāt: he requires, asks for; 3rd person singular present
 active subjunctive from requirō, requirere, requisīvī,
 requisitus
 rēx: king; singular masculine nominative from rēx, rēgis
 satēgīt: he was busy, hard pressed; 3rd person singular perfect
 active from satagō, satagere, satēgī, satāctūs
 satis: enough
 Saxonēs: the Saxons
 scilicet: namely, really
 secūtūs: secūtūs + est = he followed, est omitted for metrical
 reasons
 sed: but
 sic: thus
 somnō: sleep; singular masculine ablative from somnus, somnī
 sopōrīs: of sleep; singular masculine genitive from sopor,
 sopōrīs
 statim: immediately
 suscēpīt: he undertook, he supported; 3rd person singular
 perfect active from suscipiō, suscipere, suscēpī, suspectus
 tālis: such; singular common nominative from tālis, tālis, tāle
 tandem: finally
 terga: backs; plural neuter accusative from tergum, tergī
 torpōre: numbness, stupefaction; singular masculine ablative
 from torpor, torpōrīs
 trādiderant: they had handed over; 3rd person plural pluperfect
 active from trādō, trādere, trādīdi, trādītūs
 tunc: then
 utcunqūe: as soon as, by any means
 vēlōx: quick; singular nominative from vēlōx, vēlōcīs (gen.),
 vēlōcīor -or -us, vēlōcīssīmus -a -um
 vēnīt: he came; 3rd person singular present active from veniō,
 venire, vēnī, ventus
 vī: strength; singular feminine ablative from vīs, vīs,
 viriliter: strongly
 virtūs: virtue, manliness, power; singular feminine nominative
 from virtūs, virtūtīs
 Westfālhōs: Westphalians, members of a Saxon tribe

Annō 776

Cumque domum rediēns prīnceps iter accelerāret,
Comperit¹ Ausoniīs in partibus esse tirannum,
Nōmine Hrodgaudum, nova quī mōlīmina² temptāns,
Nec, quem³ rēx illī dederat, contentus honōre,
Ītaliae lātum voluit sibi subdere rēnum.
Quippe⁴ ducem comitemque Forōiulēnsibus ipsum
Cōnstituit Carolus, prīmō cum clāra⁵ triumphō
Dē Langōbardīs victor vēxilla⁶ revēxit.

¹*He discovered, in parts of Ausonia/Italy, (there) to be a tyrant, named Hrodgaudum.*

²*Who, trying new endeavours. The new endeavours were military operations Hrodgaudum undertook to try to conquer more of Italy.*

³*Neither content with the honor which the king (Charlemagne) had given him.*

⁴*Indeed, Charlemagne had made he himself (Hrodgaudum) duke and count of the Friulian.*

⁵*At first glance, clāra appears to modify triumphō. However, clāra cannot be in the ablative since its last syllable must be short to fit the meter. Also, triumphō is masculine. Therefore, clāra must be plural neuter accusative and modify vēxilla in the next line.*

⁶*He (Charlemagne), the victor, carried back the flags of the Lombards.*

accelerāret: he was speeding up; 3rd person singular imperfect
 active subjunctive from accelerō, accelerāre, accelerāvī,
 accelerātus
 annō: year; singular masculine ablative from annus, annī
 Ausoniīs: in Ausonia, a poetic name for Italy
 Carolus: Charlemagne, AD 748-814, King of the Franks and
 Emperor of the Western Roman Empire, member of the
 Carolingian Dynasty
 clāra: famous; plural neuter accusative from clārus, clāra -um,
 clārior -or -us, clārissimus -a -um
 comitem: count, comrade; singular common accusative from
 comes, comitis
 comperit: he discovered; 3rd person singular present active
 from comperiō, comperire, comperi, compertus
 cōstituit: he appointed; 3rd person singular present active
 from cōstituō, cōstituere, cōstituī, cōstitūtus
 contentus: content, satisfied, eager, from contentus, contenta,
 contentum
 cum: with
 dē: of, from, away from, down from
 dederat: he had given; 3rd person singular pluperfect active
 from dō, dare, dedi, datus
 domum: home; singular feminine accusative from domus, domūs
 ducem: leader; singular masculine accusative from dux, ducis
 esse: to be
 Forōiulēnsibus: with those living in Friuli, a historical region of
 northeast Italy
 honore: honor; singular masculine ablative from honor, honōris
 Hrodgaudum: Hrodgau (or Rodgand), Duke of Friuli from 774
 to 776.
 illi: to that one; singular dative from ille, illa, illud
 in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
 ipsum: himself; singular masculine acc. or neuter nom. or acc.
 from ipse, ipsa, ipsum
 Italiāe: Italy (genitive or locative case)
 iter: journey, trip; singular neuter accusative from iter, itineris
 Langōbardis: the Lombards
 lātum: wide; singular neuter accusative
 mōlīmina: exertion, effort, endeavour; plural neuter accusative
 from mōlīmen, mōlīminis
 nec: nor, not either
 nōmine: name; singular neuter ablative from nōmen, nōminis
 nova: new; plural neuter accusative from novus, nova -um,
 novior -or -us, novissimus -a -um
 partibus: parts; plural feminine ablative from pars, partis
 prīmō: first; singular masculine ablative from prīmus, prīma,
 prīmum
 prīnceps: first man, prince; singular masculine nominative from
 prīnceps, prīncipis
 quem: which, singular masculine accusative of qui
 qui: who; singular masculine nominative of quis
 quippe: indeed
 rediēns: returning; singular nominative present participle from
 redeō, redire, rediū(i), reditus
 rēgnūm: kingdom; singular neuter accusative from rēgnūm,
 rēgni
 revēxit: he carried back; 3rd person singular perfect active from
 revehō, revehere, revēxi, revectus
 rēx: king; singular masculine nominative from rēx, rēgis
 sibi: to himself; singular dative of se
 subdere: to place under; present active infinitive from subdō,
 subdere, subdidī, subditus
 temptāns: trying; singular nominative present participle from
 temptō, temptāre, temptāvī, temptātus
 triumphō: triumph; singular masculine ablative from triumphus,
 triumphī
 tirannūm: tyrant; singular masculine accusative variant spelling
 from tyrannus, tyrannī
 vexilla: flags, banners; plural neuter accusative from vexillum,
 vexilli
 victor: victor; singular masculine nominative from victor,
 victōris
 voluit: he wanted; 3rd person singular perfect active from volō,
 velle, voluī, -

Huic nimis ingrātus¹ dōnō male sollicitābat
Urbibus ex multīs populōs, ac fēcit ut ad sē
Dēficerent, iūstō Carolī sprētō dominātū.
Hōs ut comprimeret² mōtūs, nīl ipse morātus,
Strēnua quam celerī raptim vocat agmina iussū.
Cum quibus Ītaliām properāns, meritōque³ tyrannum
Interitū plēctēns, urbēs servāre⁴ receptās
Francōrum comitēs, quōs ipse locābat in illīs,
Iussit, et ut vēnit, vēlōx sīc⁵ inde recessit.
Vix Alpīnārum nivium iuga proxima caelō
Illī trānsgressō trīstis fuit obvia fāma⁶,
Ērēsburg referēns urbem, quam cooperat ūlim
Mīlitibusque suīs mandāverat ipse tuendam,
Saxonēs expugnātam coepisse⁷, suumque
Expulsum fore praesidium violenter ab illīs.

¹(*Hrodgaud*), *overly ungrateful to this gift, was wickedly stirring up the peoples out of many cities, and made them defect (from Charlemagne) to him, spurning the just dominion of Charlemagne.*

²*So that he might squash this rebellion, he (Charlemagne) himself delayed not at all, (and) very speedily called strong armies with quick command.*

³*And punishing the tyrant (Hrodgaud) with merited death.*

⁴*He ordered the counts of the Franks to guard the recovered cities. servāre goes with iussit two lines down.*

⁵*And in the manner he came, thus he quickly returned from there.*

⁶*Sad news was in the way to (meet) him. As soon as Charlemagne had crossed the Alps, a messenger met him with the bad news about the Saxon rebellion.*

⁷*(The messenger related) the Saxons to have begun fighting and their garrison to be expelled violently by them.*

ab: from, out of, by, since	populus, populi
ac: and	praesidium: garrison; singular neuter nominative from praesidium, praesidiū
ad: to, towards, at, according to	properāns: hurrying; singular nominative present participle from properō, properāre, properāvī, properātūs
agmina: marching armies; plural neuter accusative from agmen, agminis	proxima: nearest; plural neuter accusative from proximus, proxima, proximum
Alpīnārum: of the Alps; plural feminine genitive from Alpīnus, Alpīna, Alpīnum	quam: very
caelō: heaven, sky; singular masculine ablative from caelus, caeli	quibus: with whom; plural dative or ablative of qui
Caroli: of Charlemagne (genitive case), AD 748-814, King of the Franks and Emperor of the Western Roman Empire, member of the Carolingian Dynasty	quōs: whom; plural masculine accusative of quis
celerī: quick; singular ablative from celer, celeris -e, celerior -or -us, celerrimus -a -um	raptim: quickly, hastily
cooperat: he had started; 3rd person singular pluperfect active from coepī, coepisse, coepī, coepitus	receptās: having been recovered; plural feminine accusative perfect passive participle from recipiō, recipere, recēpī, receptus
coepisse: to have started; perfect active infinitive from coepī, coepisse, coepī, coepitus	recessit: he withdrew; 3rd person singular perfect active from recēdō, recēdere, recessī, recessus
comitēs: counts; plural common accusative from comes, comitis	referēns: reporting; singular nominative present participle from referō, referre, rettulī, relātūs
comprimeret: he suppressed; 3rd person singular imperfect active subjunctive from comprimō, comprimere, compressī, compressus	Saxonēs: the Saxons
cum: with	sē: himself
dēficerent: they defected; 3rd person plural imperfect subjunctive from dēficiō, dēficere, dēfēcī, dēfectus	servāre: to watch over, to guard, to preserve, to save; present active infinitive from servō, servāre, servāvī, servātūs
dominātū: rule, mastery; singular masculine ablative from dominātus, dominātūs	sīc: thus
dōnō: gift; singular neuter ablative or dative from dōnum, dōni	sollicitābat: he was stirring up, agitating; 3rd person singular imperfect active from sollicitō, sollicitāre, sollicitāvī, sollicitātūs
Erēsbūrg: a Saxon refuge castle near modern-day Obermarsberg	sprētō: having been scorned, despised; singular masculine ablative perfect passive participle from spernō, spernere, sprēvī, sprētus
et: and	strēnuā: brisk, vigorous; plural feminine accusative from strēnuus, strēnuā, strēnum
ex: out of, from	suis: their; plural dative or ablative of suus
expugnātām: fighting; singular feminine accusative gerund from expugnō, expugnāre, expugnāvī, expugnātūs	suūm: his; singular masculine accusative from suus, sui
expulsum: having been driven out; singular neuter nominative perfect passive participle from expuls.ūm	trānsgressō: having crossed over; singular masculine ablative perfect participle from transgredior, transgredi, transgressus sum
fāma: report, news, rumor; singular feminine nominative from fāma, fāmae	trīstis: sad; singular common nominative from trīstis, trīstis, trīste
fēcit: he did; 3rd person singular perfect active from faciō, facere, fēcī, factus	tuēdam: protecting, looking after; singular feminine accusative gerund from tueor, tuērī, tuitus sum
fore: to be; future active infinitive from sum, esse, fūi, futūrus	tyrannūm: tyrant; singular masculine accusative from tyrannus, tyrannī
Francōrum: of the Franks	urbēm: city; singular feminine accusative from urbs, urbis
fuit: it was; 3rd person singular perfect active from sum, esse, fūi, futūrus	urbēs: cities; plural feminine accusative from urbs, urbis
hōs: these; plural masculine accusative from hic, haec, hoc	urbibūs: cities; plural feminine ablative from urbs, urbis
huic: to this; singular dative of hic, haec, hoc	ut: so that
illī: that; singular dative from ille, illa, illud	vēlōx: quick; singular nominative from vēlōx, vēlōcīs (gen.), vēlōcīor -or -us, vēlōcīssimus -a -um
illīs: those; plural dative or ablative from ille, illa, illud	vēnīt: he came; 3rd person singular present active from veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventus
in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)	violēnter: violently
inde: from there, since	vix: barely
ingrātūs: ungrateful, unpleasant; singular masculine nominative from ingrātūs, ingrātā, ingrātūm	vocāt: he calls; 3rd person singular present active from vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātūs
interitū: death, ruin; singular neuter ablative from intereo, interire, interīv(i), interitus	
ipse: himself; singular masculine nominative from ipse, ipsa, ipsum	
Ītaliām: Italy (accusative case)	
iuga: peaks (of a mountain); plural neuter accusative from iugum, iugī	
iussit: he commanded; 3rd person singular perfect from iubeō, iubēre, iussi, iussus	
iussū: order, command, decree; singular neuter ablative from iubeō, iubēre, iussi, iussus	
iūstō: iust, righteous; singular masculine ablative from iūstus, iūsta -um, iūstior -or -us, iūstissimus -a -um	
locābat: he stationed; 3rd person singular imperfect active from locō, locāre, locāvī, locātūs	
male: in an evil manner; adverb from malus, mala -um, peior -or -us, -	
mandāverat: he had entrusted; 3rd person singular pluperfect active from mandō, mandāre, mandāvī, mandātūs	
meritō: merited; singular masculine ablative perfect passive participle from mereō, merēre, merūi, meritus	
mīlitibūs: soldiers; plural masculine ablative from mīles, mīlitis	
mōrātūs: mōrātūs est = he stayed, dwelled, delayed, est omitted for metrical reasons; singular masculine nominative perfect participle from moror, morārī, morātūs sum	
mōtūs: rebellions, tumults, movements; plural masculine accusative from mōtūs, mōtūs	
multīs: many; plural ablative from multus, multa -um, -, plūrimus -a -um	
nil: not at all	
nīmis: too much, extremely	
nīvīum: of snow; plural feminine genitive from nīx, nīvis	
obvīa: in the path	
ōlīm: one day, once upon a time	
plēctēns: punishing; singular nominative present participle from plēctō, plēctere	
populōs: peoples, populaces; plural masculine accusative from	

Tum Sigiburg¹ aliud multō cōnāmine castrum
Oppugnāre quidem studuit, nec vincere quīvit
Gēns eadem, cupiēns ab eā rēgis legiōnēs
Pellere; sed pugnae populus Saxōnicus īstāns,
Ā tergō circumventus² fuit atque fugātus,
Interius positīs³ simul ērumpentibus, atque
Incautōs⁴ plāgā facile sternentibus amplā.
Hic rūmor Carolī cum prīmū vēnit ad aurēs,
Conventum procerum fierī praecoepit in urbe
Wormaciā, statuitque morās innectere⁵ nūllās,
Quīn⁶ lueret tantī sceleris gēns perfida poenās.
Ergo suīs exercitibus rēx undique lectīs,
Cōnātūs⁷ celer hostīlēs praevertitur omnēs,
Temptāvēre quibus prīmō dēfendere sēsē.

¹*Then the same people (the Saxons) hastened to attack another castle, Sigiburg (Castle), with a great attempt, but were not able to prevail.*

²*They (the Saxon people) were surrounded from behind and put to flight.*

³*Those (Frankish soldiers) placed (within Sigiburg castle) at the same time sallied forth (from the castle to attack the fleeing Saxons).*

⁴*Striking down easily the unguarded (Saxons who were fleeing) with a great blow.*

⁵*He decided to contrive no delays.*

⁶*So that the treacherous people (the Saxons) might pay the penalties for such a crime.*

⁷*Therefore the swift king, with his chosen armies from all around, pre-empted the hostile enemy attacks, with which they had tried at first to defend themselves.*

ā: from, out of, by, since
 ab: from, out of, by, since
 ad: to, towards, at, according to
 aliud: another; singular neuter accusative from *alius*, *alia*, *aliud*
 amplā: large; singular feminine ablative from *amplus*, *ampla*
 -um, *amplior* -or -us, *amplissimus* -a -um
 atque: and
 aurēs: ears; plural feminine accusative from *auris*, *auris*
 Caroli: of Charlemagne, AD 748-814, King of the Franks and
 Emperor of the Western Roman Empire, member of the
 Carolingian Dynasty (genitive case)
 castrum: fort, castle; singular neuter accusative from *castrum*,
 castrī
 celer: quick; singular masculine nominative from *celer*, *celeris*,
 celere
 circumventus: circumventus fuit = they had been surrounded;
 singular masculine nominative perfect passive participle
 from *circumveniō*, *circumvenire*, *circumvēni*, *circumventus*
 praecoopit: he ordered started; 3rd person singular perfect
 active variant spelling from *praecipiō*, *praecipere*, *praecēpi*,
 praeceptus
 cōnāmine: effort, struggle; singular neuter ablative from
 cōnāmen, cōnāminis
 cōnātūs: efforts; plural masculine accusative from *cōnātūs*,
 cōnātūs
 conventum: meeting, convention; singular masculine accusative
 from *conventus*, *conventūs*
 cum: with
 cupiēns: desiring; singular nominative present participle from
 cupiō, *cupere*, *cupiū*, *cupitūs*
 dēfendere: to defend; active infinitive from *dēfendō*, *dēfendere*,
 dēfendī, *dēfēnsus*
 eā: it; singular feminine ablative from *is*, *ea*, *id*
 eadem: the same; singular feminine nominative from *īdem*,
 eadem, *idem*
 ergo: therefore
 ērumpentibus: breaking out, erupting; plural ablative present
 participle from *ērumpō*, *ērumpere*, *ērūpī*, *ēruptus*
 exercitibus: armies; plural masculine ablative from *exercitus*,
 exercitūs
 facile: easily; adverb from *facilis*, *facile*, *faciliōr* -or -us,
 faciliūs -a -um
 fierī: to happen, to occur; active infinitive from *fiō*, *fierī*, *factus*
 sum
 fugātūs: having been routed, chased away; singular masculine
 nominative perfect passive participle from *fugō*, *fugāre*,
 fugāvī, *fugātūs*
 gēns: people, clan, nation; singular feminine nominative from
 gēns, *gentis*
 hic: this; singular masculine nominative of *hic*, *haec*, *hoc*
 hostilēs: enemies; plural common accusative from *hostilis*,
 hostilis, *hostile*
 in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
 incautōs: off one's guard, unprotected, incautious; plural
 masculine accusative from *incautus*, *incauta* -um, *incautior*
 -or -us, *incautissimus* -a -um
 innectere: to tie, fasten; active infinitive from *innectō*,
 innectere, *innexū*, *innexus*
 īstāns: pressing forward; singular nominative present
 participle from *īstō*, *īstare*, *īstītī*, -
 interius: interiorly, inside; adverb from *interior*, *interior*, *interius*
 lectis: chosen; plural ablative perfect passive participle from
 legō, *legere*, *lēgī*, *lēctus*
 legiōnēs: legions; plural feminine accusative from *legiō*, *legiōnis*
 lueret: they might pay, expiate; 3rd person singular imperfect
 active subjunctive from *luō*, *luere*, *lūi*, *lūtus*
 morās: delays; plural feminine accusative from *mora*, *moraē*
 multō: great, many; singular masculine ablative from *multus*,
 multa -um, -, *plūrimus* -a -um
 nec: nor, not either
 nūllās: no, none, not any; plural feminine accusative from
 nūllus, *nūlla*, *nūllum* (gen -ius)
 omnēs: all, every; plural common accusative from *omnis*, *omnis*,
 ome
 oppūgnāre: to attack; active infinitive from *oppūgnō*,
 oppūgnāre, *oppūgnāvī*, *oppūgnātūs*
 pellere: to drive away; active infinitive from *pellō*, *pellere*,
 pepulī, *pulsus*
 perfida: treacherous, deceitful; singular feminine nominative
 from *perfidus*, *perfida*, *perfidum*
 plāgā: strike, blow; singular feminine ablative from *plāga*,
 plāgæ
 poenās: penalties, punishments; plural feminine accusative from
 poena, *poenae*
 populus: people, populace; singular masculine nominative from
 populus, *populi*
 positis: having been placed; plural ablative perfect passive
 participle from *pōnō*, *pōnere*, *posū*, *positus*
 praevertitur: he pre-empted, anticipated; 3rd person singular

present passive from *praeverto*, *praevertere*, *praeverti*, -
 prīmo: first; singular masculine ablative from *primus*, *prīma*,
 prīmū
 prīmū: first; singular neuter nominative from *prīmus*, *prīma*,
 prīmū
 procerū: of noblemen; plural masculine genitive from *procer*,
 proceris
 pugnāe: to the battle; singular feminine dative from *pugna*,
 pugnæ
 quibus: with which; plural ablative of *qui*
 quidem: indeed, at last
 quin: even, in fact
 quīvit: they (the Saxon people) were able; 3rd person singular
 perfect active from *queō*, *quīre*, *quīvī*, *quītus*
 rēgis: of the king; singular masculine genitive from *rēx*, *rēgis*
 rēx: king; singular masculine nominative from *rēx*, *rēgis*
 rūmor: rumor; singular masculine nominative from *rūmor*,
 rūmōris
 Saxōnicus: Saxon
 sceleris: crime; singular neuter genitive from *scelus*, *sceleris*
 sed: but
 sēsē: themselves
 Sigiburg: A Saxon hillfort in Western Germany
 simul: at the same time as
 statuit: he decided; 3rd person singular present active from
 statuō, *statuē*, *statuī*, *statutūs*
 sternēntibus: striking down, spreading, laying out; plural
 ablative present participle from *sternō*, *sternere*, *strāvī*,
 strātūs
 studiūt: they (the Saxon people) hastened; 3rd person singular
 perfect active from *studeō*, *studēre*, *studui*, -
 suīs: his; plural ablative of *suus*
 tantī: such, so much, so great, this many; singular masculine
 genitive from *tantus*, *tanta*, *tantum*
 temptāvēt: they tried, attempted; 3rd person plural perfect
 active from *temptō*, *temptāre*, *temptāvī*, *temptātūs*
 tergō: back; singular neuter ablative from *tergum*, *tergī*
 tum: then
 undique: from all sides
 urbe: city; singular feminine ablative from *urbs*, *urbis*
 vēnit: he came; 3rd person singular present active from *veniō*,
 venire, *vēnī*, *ventus*
 vincere: to conquer; active infinitive from *vincō*, *vincere*, *vīcī*,
 victus
 Wormaciā: Worms, a city in Germany; singular feminine ablative
 from *Wormacia*, *Wormaciae*

Nam fontēs adiēns, ubi Lyppia nāscitur amnis,

Repperit ex ipsā numerōsās gente catervās

Illīc collēctās, humilēs veniamque precantēs,

Quod nōn servāssent¹ annō prōmissa priōrī.

Cum vērō Carolus clēmēns ignōsceret² illīs,

Complūrēs³, Dominō sē Chrīstō crēdere velle

Spondentēs simulācrōrumque relinquere cultūs,

Pūrgārī⁴ iussit sacrī baptismatis undā,

Servandaeque⁵ iterum fideī prōmissa recēpit

Obsidibus firmāta datīs, quibus ipse volēbat.

Ēresburg iterum firmat mūnīmine fortī,

Et iuxtā fluvium quem Lyppia dīximus ante

Castellum condēns⁶ aliud, complēvit utrumque

Mīlitibus lectīs; tum Gallica rūrsus ad arva

Regrediēns, hiemis tempus trānsēgit in aulā,

Nōmen⁷ Heristallī dederat cui barbara lingua.

¹Because they hadn't kept the promises of the prior year. After Charlemagne put down some of the Saxon rebellions, a group of Saxons gathered to ask for clemency, which Charlemagne granted.

²When clement Charlemagne forgave them. *Ignōscere* takes the dative instead of the accusative (hence *illīs*); the subjunctive is used because it is in a *cum* circumstantial clause.

³Many (persons), promising themselves to want to believe in the Lord Christ and to relinquish the cult/worship of idols.

⁴He (Charlemagne) ordered to be purged/cleansed by the wave/waters of sacred baptism.

⁵He received promises of keeping faith again, confirmed with hostages being given, which he (Charlemagne) himself had wanted. In Jaffé's critical text *servandaeque*, not *servandaeque*, is given. The dictionaries I consulted all listed *servande* as being in the vocative, which doesn't fit the context. Additionally, the third syllable must be long for to fit the meter, thus leaving three possibilities: (1) *servandeque* represents an uncommon spelling or convention of which I am unaware, (2) it should read *servandōque*, making it an ablative gerund, or (3) the *a* was dropped due to a misprint.

⁶And next to the river, which we above called Lyppia, building another castle, he filled both with chosen soldiers.

⁷To which the barbarian tongue had given the name Herstal.

ad: to, towards, at, according to
 adiēns: approaching, visiting; singular nominative present
 participle from adeō, adire, adivī(i), aditus
 aliud: other; singular neuter nominative from alius, alia, aliud
 amnis: river; singular masculine nominative from amnis, amnis
 anno: year; singular masculine ablative from annus, anni
 ante: before
 arva: fields; plural neuter accusative from arvum, arvi
 aulā: court; singular feminine ablative from aula, aulae
 baptīsmatis: baptism; singular neuter genitive from baptīsma,
 baptīsmatis
 barbara: barbarous; singular feminine nominative from
 barbarus, barbara -um, barbarior -or -us, barbarissimus -
 -um
 Carolus: Charlemagne, AD 748-814, King of the Franks and
 Emperor of the Western Roman Empire, member of the
 Carolingian Dynasty
 castellum: castle, stronghold; singular neuter accusative from
 castellum, castellī
 catervās: crowds; plural feminine accusative from caterva,
 catervae
 Chrīstō: to Christ (dative case)
 clēmēns: mild, gentle, lenient; singular masculine nominative
 from clēmēns, (gen.), clēmēntis
 collectās: having been assembled, collected; plural feminine
 accusative perfect passive participle from colligō, colligere,
 collēgī, collectūs
 complēvit: he filled up; 3rd person singular perfect active from
 compleō, complēre, complēvī, complētus
 complūrēs: many, several persons; plural common nominative
 from complūs, (gen.), complūris
 condēns: building, founding; singular nominative present
 participle from condō, condere, condidī, conditus
 crēdere: to believe; active infinitive from crēdō, crēdere,
 crēdidi, crēdītus
 cui: to which; singular dative from quis
 cultūs: cults, worship; plural masculine accusative from cultus,
 cultūs
 cum: with
 datīs: having been given; ablative past passive participle from
 dō, dare, dedī, datus
 dederat: it had given; 3rd person singular pluperfect active
 from dō, dare, dedī, datus
 dīximus: we said; 1st person plural perfect active from dīcō,
 dīcere, dīxi, dīctus
 Domīnō: lord; singular masculine dative from dominus, dominī
 Ērēsbūrg: a Saxon refuge castle near modern-day
 Obermarsberg
 et: and
 ex: out of, from
 fideī: of faith; singular feminine genitive from fidēs, fideī
 firmat: he hardens, fortifies; 3rd person singular present active
 from firmō, firmāre, firmāvī, firmātus
 firmātā: having been confirmed; plural neuter accusative
 perfect passive participle from firmō, firmāre, firmāvī,
 firmātus
 fluvīum: river; singular masculine accusative from fluvīus, fluvīū
 fontēs: fountains, headwaters; plural masculine accusative from
 fōns, fontis
 fortī: strong; singular ablative from fortis, forte, fortior -or -us,
 fortissimus -a -um
 Gallica: Gallic; plural neuter accusative from Gallicus, Gallica,
 Gallīcum
 gente: people, clan, nation; singular feminine ablative from
 gēns, gentis
 Herīstalli: Herstal, a city in modern-day Belgium
 hiemīs: of winter; singular feminine genitive from hiemps,
 hiemis
 humilēs: the humble (people); plural common nominative from
 humilis, humile, humilior -or -us, humillimus -a -um
 ignōscēt: he forgave; 3rd person singular imperfect active
 subjunctive from ignōscō, ignōscere, ignōvī, ignōtus
 illīc: there
 illīs: those; plural dative from ille, illa, illud
 in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
 ipsā: itself; singular feminine ablative from ipse, ipsa, ipsum
 ipse: himself; singular masculine nominative from ipse, ipsa,
 ipsum
 iterum: again
 iussit: he commanded; 3rd person singular perfect from iubeō,
 iubēre, iussī, iussus
 iuxtā: near, nearly
 lectīs: chosen; plural ablative perfect passive participle from
 legō, legere, lēgī, lēctus
 lingua: tongue, language; singular feminine nominative from
 lingua, linguae
 Lyppia: the Lippe, a river in modern-day Rhine-Westphalia,
 Germany
 mīlitibus: soldiers; plural masculine ablative from mīlēs, mīlitis

mūnīmine: defence, fortification, rampart; singular neuter
 ablative from mūnīmen, mūnīminis
 nam: yes, truly
 nāscītūr: it proceeds; infinitive
 nōmēn: name; singular neuter accusative from nōmēn, nōmīnis
 nōn: not
 numerōsās: numerous; plural feminine accusative from
 numerōsus, numerōsa -um, numerōsior -or -us,
 numerōsissimus -a -um
 obsidibus: hostages; plural common ablative from obses, obsidis
 precantēs: praying; plural common nominative present
 participle from precor, precārī, precātus sum
 priōrī: prior, ahead, previous; singular ablative from prior, prior,
 prius
 prōmissā: promises; plural neuter accusative from prōmissum,
 prōmissī
 pūrgārī: to be cleansed; passive infinitive from pūrgō, pūrgāre,
 pūrgāvī, pūrgātus
 quem: which, singular masculine accusative of qui
 whom: what; plural dative of qui
 quod: what; singular neuter nom. or acc. of qui
 recēpit: he received; 3rd person singular perfect active from
 recipiō, recipere, recipi, receptus
 regredīens: returning; singular nominative present participle
 from regredior, regredi, regressus sum
 relinquerē: abandon, leave behind; active infinitive from
 relinquō, relinquerē, reliquī, relictus
 repperit: he found; 3rd person singular perfect from reperiō,
 reperiē, repperī, repertus
 rūrsus: backwards, on the flipside
 sacrī: sacred; singular masculine genitive from sacer, sacra,
 sacrum
 sē: themselves
 servāndae: of keeping; singular feminine genitive gerund from
 servō, servāre, servāvī, servātus
 servāssent: they had kept, perserved; 3rd person plural
 pluperfect active subjunctive from servō, servāre, servāvī,
 servātus
 simulācrōrum: of idols, images, likenesses; plural neuter
 genitive from simulācrum, simulācrī
 spondentēs: promising; plural common nominative present
 participle from spondeo, spondere, speondi, sponsus
 tempus: time, period; singular neuter accusative from tempus,
 temporis
 trānsēgit: carried out; 3rd person singular perfect active from
 trānsigō, trānsigere, trānsēgī, trānsactus
 tum: then
 ubī: where, when if
 undā: wave; singular feminine ablative from unda, undae
 utrum: both
 velle: to want; active infinitive from volō, velle, volū, -
 veniam: indulgence, kindness; singular feminine accusative
 from venia, veniae
 vērō: truly, even so, still
 volēbat: he was wanting; 3rd person singular imperfect active
 from volō, velle, volū, -

Annō 777

Aspīrante¹ novī placidō cum tempore vēris
Horrida iam trānsīsset hiems, rēx Nōviomāgum²
Adveniēns, celebrāvit ibī sollempnia Paschae.
Tum quia Saxonēs suspectōs semper habēbat,
Haud dubitāns, illōs prō libertāte tenenda³
Artibus āctūrōs variīs quodcumque valērent,
Et nisi continuī premerentur⁴ pondere bellī,
Foedera ruptūrōs⁵, sēcum condicta frequenter,
Rūrsus in illōrum patriam fortissima dūcit
Agmina: conventum placitī generālis habēre
Cum ducibus sē velle suīs dēnunciat illīc.

¹When the calm season of new spring breathing. A more idiomatic, though less strict, English translation might be: With the new season breathing the pleasant springtime breezes.

²The king (Charlemagne) arriving at Nōviomāgus.

³Not doubting, them for the holding of liberty to act with various arts, whatever they could.

⁴And unless pressed down by the weight of continuous war.

⁵Would break treaties.

āctūrōs: to be conducted/done; plural masculine accusative future participle from <i>ágō</i> , <i>agere</i> , <i>égi</i> , <i>āctus</i>	tempore: time, period; singular neuter ablative from <i>tempus</i> , <i>temporis</i>
adveniēns: arriving; singular nominative present participle from <i>tenenda</i>	holding; singular feminine nominative future passive participle from <i>teneō</i> , <i>tenēre</i> , <i>tenuī</i> , <i>tentus</i>
adveniō, adveniēre, advēni, adventus	adveniō, adveniēre, advēni, adventus
agmina: marching armies; plural neuter accusative from <i>agmen</i> , <i>trānsisset</i> : it having had passed; 3rd person singular pluperfect active subjunctive from <i>trānseō</i> , <i>trānsire</i> , <i>trānsivi(i)</i> , <i>trānsitus</i>	agmina: marching armies; plural neuter accusative from <i>agmen</i> , <i>trānsisset</i> : it having had passed; 3rd person singular pluperfect active subjunctive from <i>trānseō</i> , <i>trānsire</i> , <i>trānsivi(i)</i> , <i>trānsitus</i>
annō: year; singular masculine ablative from <i>annus</i> , <i>annī</i>	tum: then
artibus: arts, skills; plural feminine ablative from <i>ars</i> , <i>artis</i>	valērent: they were able; 3rd person plural imperfect active subjunctive from <i>valeo</i> , <i>valere</i> , <i>valui</i> , <i>valitus</i>
aspirante: breathing, influencing; singular ablative present participle from <i>aspirō</i> , <i>aspirāre</i> , <i>aspirāvī</i> , <i>aspirātus</i>	variis: various, diverse; plural ablative from <i>varius</i> , <i>varia</i> , <i>varium</i>
belli: of battle, war; singular neuter genitive from <i>bellum</i> , <i>bellī</i>	velle: to want; 2nd person singular present active imperative from <i>vello</i> , <i>vellere</i> , <i>velli</i> , <i>vulsus</i>
celebrāvit: he celebrated; 3rd person singular perfect active from <i>celebrō</i> , <i>celebrāre</i> , <i>celebrāvī</i> , <i>celebrātus</i>	vēris: spring; singular neuter genitive from <i>vēr</i> , <i>vēris</i>
condicta: having been agreed; plural neuter accusative perfect passive participle from <i>condico</i> , <i>condicere</i> , <i>condixi</i> , <i>condictus</i>	
continū: continually; 1st person singular perfect active from <i>contineō</i> , <i>continēre</i> , <i>continui</i> , <i>contentus</i>	
conventum: meeting, convention; singular masculine accusative from <i>conventus</i> , <i>conventus</i>	
cum: with	
cumque: and with	
dēnūciat: he gives notice, organizes; 3rd person singular present from variant spelling from <i>dēnūtiō</i> , <i>dēnūtiāre</i> , <i>dēnūtiāvī</i> , <i>dēnūtiātus</i>	
dubitāns: doubting; singular nominative present participle from <i>dubitō</i> , <i>dubitāre</i> , <i>dubitāvī</i> , <i>dubitātus</i>	
ducibus: leaders; plural masculine dative from <i>dux</i> , <i>ducis</i>	
dūcit: he leads; 3rd person singular present active from <i>dūcō</i> , <i>dūcere</i> , <i>dūxi</i> , <i>ductus</i>	
et: and	
foedera: treaties; plural neuter accusative from <i>foedus</i> , <i>foederis</i>	
fortissima: very strong; plural neuter accusative from <i>fortis</i> , <i>forte</i> , <i>fortior</i> -or -us, <i>fortissimus</i> -a -um	
frequenter: frequently;	
generālis: general; singular common nominative from <i>generālis</i> , <i>generālis</i> , <i>generāle</i>	
habēbat: he had; 3rd person singular imperfect active from <i>habeo</i> , <i>habēre</i> , <i>habui</i> , <i>habitus</i>	
habēre: to have; infinitive from <i>habeo</i> , <i>habēre</i> , <i>habui</i> , <i>habitus</i>	
haud: not, not at all	
hiems: winter; singular feminine nominative from <i>hiems</i> , <i>hiemis</i>	
horrida: dreadful, horrid; singular feminine nominative from <i>horridus</i> , <i>horrida</i> , <i>horridum</i>	
iam: already, now, soon	
ibi: there, then	
illīc: there	
illōrum: of those; plural masculine or neuter genitive from <i>ille</i> , <i>illa</i> , <i>illud</i>	
illōs: that; plural masculine accusative from <i>ille</i> , <i>illa</i> , <i>illud</i>	
in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)	
libertātē: liberty; singular feminine ablative from <i>libertās</i> , <i>libertatis</i>	
niſī: if not, unless	
novi: new; singular neuter genitive from <i>novus</i> -i -um	
Nōviomāgum: a city of the Treveri, now Nijmegen, city in Holland; singular feminine accusative from <i>Nōviomāgus</i> , <i>Nōviomāgi</i>	
Paschae: Pascha, Easter; singular feminine genitive from <i>Pascha</i> , <i>Paschae</i>	
patriam: fatherland; singular feminine accusative from <i>patria</i> , <i>patriae</i>	
placidō: placid, gentle, quiet; singular masculine ablative from <i>placidus</i> , <i>placida</i> , <i>placidum</i>	
placiti: of decision, decree, court; singular neuter genitive from <i>placitum</i> , <i>placiti</i>	
pondere: weight, burden; singular neuter ablative from <i>pondus</i> , <i>ponderis</i>	
premerentur: they were pressed, overwhelmed; 3rd person plural imperfect passive subjunctive from <i>premo</i> , <i>premere</i> , <i>pressi</i> , <i>pressus</i>	
prō: for, in favor of, before, in place of	
quia: because	
rēx: king; singular masculine nominative from <i>rēx</i> , <i>rēgis</i>	
ruptūrōs: to be breaking, destroying; plural masculine accusative future participle from <i>rumpō</i> , <i>rumpere</i> , <i>rūpī</i> , <i>ruptus</i>	
rūrsus: backwards, on the flipside	
Saxonēs: the Saxons	
sē: himself	
sēcum: with oneself	
semper: always	
sollempnia: solemnities, sacred rites; plural neuter accusative from <i>sollempnis</i> , <i>sollempne</i> , <i>sollempnior</i> -or -us, <i>sollempnissimus</i> -a -um	
suis: their; plural dative of <i>suis</i>	
suspectōs: having been suspected; plural masculine accusative from <i>suspectus</i> , <i>specta</i> -um, <i>suspectior</i> -or -us, <i>suspectissimus</i> -a -um	

Tantō conciliō locus est ēlēctus¹ agendō,
Quem Pāthalbrunnon² vocitant, quō nōn habet ipsa
Gēns alium nātūrālī plūs nōbilitāte
Īnsignem, quī praecipuae redimītus abundat
Fontibus et nitidīs et plūribus, et trahit inde
Barbaricae nōmen linguae sermōne vetustum.

Tunc ibi vīlla fuit tantum, nunc pontificālis
Ecclesiae⁴ cōstrūcta nitet clārissima sēdēs⁵.

¹*A place was chosen for conducting such a council.*

²*Which they call Pathalbrunnon, in which the people themselves have another remarkable (place) of greater natural nobility (than other places in that area), which having been especially crowned abounds with springs, shimmering and plentiful.* Pathalbrunnon is Aachen, a city in modern-day North Rhine-Westphalia. It is known for having many hot springs. The name Pathalbrunnon, which the narrator relates is from the barbaric (German) tongue, appears to come from *athal*, meaning noble, and *brunno*, meaning well.

³The Aachen Cathedral was constructed between 796-798 AD. At the time of its completion it was the largest cathedral north of the Alps.

⁴Normally spelled *Ecclēsiae*, but the *e* must be short to fit the meter. If poetic license was not taken, then that word could never be used, since long-long-short-long can never fit in dactylic hexameter.

⁵*Now a pontifical seat (a cathedral) of the church, having been constructed, shines brightly (meaning it is a renowned building).*

abundat: it abounds; 3rd person singular present active from
 abundō, abundāre, abundāvi, abundātus
 agendō: conducting, doing; singular masculine ablative gerund
 from agō, agere, ēgī, āctus
 alium: other; singular masculine accusative from alius, alia,
 aliud
 barbaricae: barbaric; singular feminine genitive from
 barbaricus, barbarica, barbaricum
 clārissima: very famous; singular feminine nominative from
 clārus, clāra -um, clārior -or -us, clārissimus -a -um
 conciliō: council; singular neuter ablative from cōsilium,
 cōsiliū
 cōstrūcta: having been constructed; singular feminine
 nominative perfect passive participle from cōstruō,
 cōstruere, cōstrūxi, cōstrūctus
 ecclēsiae: church; singular feminine genitive from ecclēsia,
 ecclēsiae
 ēlēctus: ēlēctus est = it was chosen; singular masculine
 nominative perfect passive participle from ēligō, ēligere,
 ēlēgī, ēlēctus
 est: he is; 3rd person singular present active from sum, esse,
 fui, futūrus
 et: and
 fontibus: fountains; plural masculine ablative from fōns, fontis
 fuit: he was; 3rd person singular perfect active from sum, esse,
 fui, futūrus
 gēns: people, clan, nation; singular feminine nominative from
 gēns, gentis
 habet: he has; 3rd person singular present active from habeō,
 habēre, habui, habitus
 ibi: there, then
 inde: from there, since
 īsignem: distinguished; singular common accusative from
 īsignis, īsignis, īsigne
 ipsa: itself; singular feminine nominative from ipse, ipsa, ipsum
 linguae: language; singular feminine genitive from lingua,
 linguae
 locus: place; singular masculine nominative from locus, loci
 nātūrāli: natural; singular ablative from nātūrālis, nātūrālis,
 nātūrāle
 nitet: it shines, glitters, thrives; 3rd person singular present
 active from niteō, nitēre, nitū, -
 nitidī: shining, bright; plural ablative from nitidus, nitida,
 nitidum
 nōbilitāte: fame, nobility; singular feminine ablative from
 nōbilitās, nōbilitātis
 nōmen: name; singular neuter accusative from nōmen, nōminis
 nunc: now
 plūribus: many; plural ablative from plus, (gen.), pluris
 plūs: more, from mūltus
 pontificālis: pontifical, relating to the Pope; singular common
 nominative from pontificalis, pontificalis, pontificale
 praecipuae: particular, special; singular feminine genitive from
 praecipuus, praecipua, praecipuum
 quem: which; singular masculine accusative of qui
 quī: who; plural masculine nominative of quis
 quō: in which; singular ablative of quis
 redimītus: having been crowned; singular masculine nominative
 perfect passive participle from redimiō, redimire, redimī,
 redimītum
 sēdēs: seat; singular feminine nominative from sēdēs, sēdis
 sermōne: speech; singular masculine ablative from sermō,
 sermōnis
 tantō: such, so much, so great; singular masculine ablative from
 tantus, tanta, tantum
 tantum: only; singular neuter nominative from tantus, tanta,
 tantum
 trahit: it draws; 3rd person singular present active from trahō,
 trahere, trāxi, tractus
 tunc: then
 Pāthalbrunnon: Aachen, a city in modern-day North Rhine-
 Westphalia
 vetustum: ancient; singular neuter nominative from vetustus,
 vetusta, vetustum
 vīlla: farm, villa; singular feminine nominative from villa, vīllae
 vocitant: they call; 3rd person plural present active from vocitō,
 vocitāre, vocitāvī, vocitātus

Quō Carolus veniēns, collēctōs repperit omnēs
Paene ducēs, populumque simul, tōtumque senātum
Saxonum, nisi quod quīdam Widokindus¹ abinde
Aufūgit, rēgem veritus; nam cōnscius īdem²
Audācis sibimet factī multīque reātūs,
Sīfrīdum petiit Dānōrum scēptra regentem.
Porro ducēs illīc aliī cum plēbe gregātī
Suppliciter cūnctī veniam pācemque petentēs,
Pāruerant rēgī sub tālī conditiōne,
Ut cūnctā scelerum dīmissā mōle³ priōrum,
Sī post audērent eius violāre statūta,
Lībertāte simul prīscā patriāque carērent.
Quōrum⁴ tum Chrīstō sē crēdere velle professa
Magna salūtiferum suscēpit turba lavācrum.
Sed simulāta⁵ fidēs versūtō prōdiit ūre,

Quod nōtum multīs fēcēre sequentia gesta.

¹Except that a certain Widokindus fled from there, having feared the king.

²For the same one (Widokindus) conscious of his audacious deed and many criminal charges, sought (refuge in the court of) Sifridus, reigning over the Danes. *sibimet* functions as an intensifier, emphasizing that the audacious deed was his own. We are not told what the deed was.

³That all having been freed from the weight of their prior crimes.

⁴Of those, then, a great crowd, having professed themselves to want to believe in Christ, undertook the health-bringing bath (i.e. baptism).

⁵But a feigned faith sprung forth from crafty mouth, which (their) subsequent acts made known to many.

abinde: from that place, thence, since	reātūs: accusation, charge; singular masculine genitive from reātus, reātūs
aliī: others; plural nominative from alias, alia, aliud	rēgem: king; singular masculine accusative from rēx, rēgis
audācis: bold, daring; singular genitive from audāx, audācis	regentem: reigning; singular common accusative present
(gen.), audācior -or -us, audācissimus -a -um	participle from regō, regere, rēx, rēctus
audērent: they had dared; 3rd person plural imperfect active	rēgī: king; singular masculine dative from rēx, rēgis
subjunctive from audeō, audēre, ausus sum	repperit: 3rd person singular perfect from reperiō, reperīre,
aufūgit: he fled; 3rd person singular perfect active from	repperī, reperitus
aufugio, aufugere, aufugi, -	salūtiferum: health-bringing; singular neuter accusative from salūtifer, salūtifera, salūtiferum
carērent: they would lack; 3rd person plural imperfect active	Saxōnum: of the Saxons
subjunctive from careō, carēre, caruī, caritus	scelerum: of crimes; plural neuter genitive from scelus, sceleris
Carolus: Charlemagne, AD 748-814, King of the Franks and	scēptrā: scepters; plural neuter accusative from scēptrum,
Emperor of the Western Roman Empire, member of the	scēptrī
Carolingian Dynasty	sē: himself
Chrīstō: Christ	sed: but
collectōs: having been collected, assembled; plural masculine	senātū: senate; singular masculine accusative from senātus,
accusative perfect passive participle from colligō, colligere,	senātūs
collegī, collectus	sequentia: following; plural neuter nominative present
conditiōne: condition; singular feminine ablative from conditiō,	participle from sequor, sequī, sécūtus sum
conditiōnis	sī: if
cōnscius: conscious, aware of; singular masculine nominative	sibimet: to himself; singular dative of sē with +met intensifier
from cōnscius, cōnscia, cōnsciūm	Sifrīdum: Sifridus, king of the Danes
crēdere: to believe; present active infinitive from credo,	simul: together with
credere, credidi, creditus	simulātā: feigned, having been simulated; singular feminine
cum: with	nominative perfect passive participle from simulō, simulāre,
cūnctā: all, whole; plural neuter ablative from cūnctus, cūncta,	simulāvī, simulātūs
cūnctum	statūta: statutes, laws; plural neuter accusative from statūtum,
cūnctī: all, whole; plural masculine nominative from cūnctus,	statūtū
cūncta, cūnctum	sub: below, under
Dānōrum: of the Danes; plural masculine genitive from Dānus,	suppliciter: humbly, suppliantly
Dāni	suscēpit: in undertook; 3rd person singular perfect active from
dīmissa: having been forgiven, dismissed ; singular feminine	suscipiō, suscipere, suscēpī, susceptus
nominative perfect passive participle from dīmittō,	tālī: such
dīmittere, dīmisi, dīmissus	tōtūm: whole, total; singular neuter accusative from tōtus, tōta,
ducēs: leaders; plural masculine accusative from dux, ducis	tōtūm (gen -ius)
eiūs: his/her/its	tum: then
factī: of the deed; singular neuter genitive from factum, factū	turba: disturbance, quarrel, troop; singular feminine nominative
fēcēre: they did, made; 3rd person plural perfect active from	from turba, turbae
faciō, facere, fēcī, factus	ut: so that
fidēs: faith; singular feminine nominative from fidēs, fideī	velle: to want;
gesta: deeds, acts	veniam: indulgence, kindness; singular feminine accusative
gregātī: having been assembled; plural masculine nominative	from venia, veniae
perfect passive participle from gregō, gregāre, gregāvī,	veniēns: coming; singular nominative present participle from
gregātus	veniō, venire, venī, ventus
illic: there	veritūs: having feared; singular masculine nominative perfect
lavācrūm: bath, baptism (in context); singular neuter accusative	participle from vereor, verērī, veritus sum
from lavācrum, lavācrī	versutō: crafty, cunning; singular masculine ablative from
libertātē: liberty; singular feminine ablative from libertās,	versūtus, versūtā, versūtūm
libertātis	violārē: to violate; present active infinitive from violō, violāre,
māgna: large; singular feminine nominative from māgnus,	violāvī, violātūs
māgna -um, major -or -us, maximus -a -um	Widokindus: a Saxon, likely a senator, who fled from
mōlē: weight; singular feminine ablative from mōles, mōlīs	Charlemagne, seeking refuge in the court of Sifridus
multī: many; singular masculine genitive from multus, multa	
-um, -, plūrimus -a -um	
multīs: many; plural dative from multus, multa -um, -, plūrimus	
-a -um	
nam: yes, truly	
nisi: if not, unless	
nōtūm: known; singular neuter nom. or acc. perfect passive	
participle of gnōscō, gnōscere, nōvī, nōtūs	
omnes: all, every; plural common accusative from omnis, omnis,	
omne	
ōre: mouth; singular neuter ablative from ōs, ōris	
pācēm: peace; singular feminine accusative from pāx, pācis	
paene: almost	
pāruerant: they would obey; 3rd person plural pluperfect active	
from pareo, parere, parui, paritus	
patriā: fatherland; singular feminine ablative from patria,	
patriae	
petentēs: asking for; plural common nominative present	
participle from petō, petere, petīvī, petītūs	
petītū: he sought; 3rd person singular perfect active from petō,	
petere, petīvī, petītūs	
plēbē: common people; singular feminine ablative from plēbs,	
plēbis	
populūm: people, populace; singular masculine accusative from	
populus, populi	
porrō: also	
post: behind, after, since	
priōrum: of the previous; plural genitive from prior, prior, prius	
prīscā: ancient; singular feminine ablative from prīscus, prīsca,	
prīscum	
prōdīt: it sprung forth; 3rd person singular perfect from	
prōdeō, prōdīre, prōdīi, prōdītūs	
professa: haved professed; singular feminine nominative perfect	
participle from profiteor, profitērī, professus sum	
qui: who; plural masculine nominative of quis	
quō: to which; singular ablative of quis	
quod: what; singular neuter nom. or acc. of qui	
quōrum: of whom; plural masc or neut. genitive of quis	

Tunc Sarrācēnūs¹ quīdam pervēnerat illūc,
Nōmine quī patriō dictus fuit Ībinalarbī².
Hic cum nōn paucīs sociīs ac cīvibus, ipsum
Quī comitābantur³, finēs regiōnis Hibērae
Linquentem, Carolō sē dēdidit, ac simul urbēs,
Rēx Sarrācēnūs quibus hunc praeferēcerat ūlim.
Ob hōc Saxonum tandem regiōne relictā,
Gallica rēgna petit⁴; post haec Aquitānia⁵ rēgem
Īsignem Carolum tenet ad paschālia fēsta.

¹*Then a certain Saracen arrived there. Saracen here means muslim.*

²*Who was called with his ancestral name Ībinalarbī.* This is Sulayman ibn Yaqzan al-Kalbi al-Arabi, a muslim governor of Barcelona and Girona. Sulayman felt threatened by the Umayyad's and sought an alliance with Charlemagne, which led to Charlemagne's march across the Pyrenees the following year.

³*This (man, the Saracene governor), with not a few of his allies and cities, who (plural) were allying with him, leaving the borders of the region of Spain, gave up to Charlemagne, and together the cities, which the Saracene king had formerly given to this one (the Saracene governor).*

⁴*On account of this finally having left the Saxon region, he sought for the Gallic land. After this Aquitania holds the distinguished King Charlemange for the Paschal (Easter) Feast.* Charlemagne needed to head west out of Saxony into Gallia in order to prepare for a march into Hispania.

⁵*Typically spelled Aquītānia (with a macron over the first i); I've omitted that macron so that it can fit the meter by being short-short-long-short-short.*

ac: and
ad: to, towards, at, according to
Aquitānia: Aquitaniae, a province in western France; singular
feminine nominative from Aquitānia, Aquitāniae
Carolō: Charlemagne, AD 748-814, King of the Franks and
Emperor of the Western Roman Empire, member of the
Carolingian Dynasty (dative case)
Carolum: Charlemagne, AD 748-814, King of the Franks and
Emperor of the Western Roman Empire, member of the
Carolingian Dynasty (accusative case)
cīvibus: citizens; plural common ablative from cīvis, cīvis
comitābantur: they had allied; 3rd person plural imperfect from
comitor, comitārī, comitātus
cum: with
dēdīdit: he surrendered, gave up; 3rd person singular perfect
active from dedo, dēdere, dedidi, deditus
dictus: having been said; singular masculine nominative perfect
passive participle from
fēsta: festivals; plural neuter accusative from fēstus, fēsta,
fēstum
finēs: boundaries, limits; plural common accusative from finis,
finis
Gallica: Gallic; plural neuter accusative from Gallicus, Gallica,
Gallicum
haec: these; plural neuter accusative of hic, haec, hoc
Hiberae: of Spain
hic: this; singular masculine nominative of hic, haec, hoc
hōc: this; sing. masc. or neut. abl. of hic, haec, hoc
hunc: this; singular masculine accusative of hic, haec, hoc
Ibinalarbi: Sulayman ibn Yaqzan al-Kalbi al-Arabi, a muslim
governor of Barcelona and Girona
illū: over there
īsignem: distinguished; singular common accusative from
īsignis, īsignis, īsigne
ipsum: himself; singular masculine acc. or neuter nom. or acc.
from ipse, ipsa, ipsum
linquentem: leaving, abandoning; singular common accusative
present participle from linquō, linquere, līquī, lictus
nōmine: name; singular neuter ablative from nōmen, nōminis
nōn: not
ob: for, because of, towards
ōlim: one day, once upon a time
Paschālia: Paschal (related to Easter); plural neuter nominative
from paschālis, paschālis, paschāle
patriō: fatherly, ancestral; singular masculine ablative from
patrius, patria, patrium
paucis: few; plural masculine ablative from paucus, pauci
pervēnerat: he had arrived; 3rd person singular pluperfect
active from pervenīo, pervenīre, pervēnī, perventus
petit: he sought; 3rd person singular present active from petō,
petere, petīvī, petītus
post: behind, after, since
praefeccerat: he had put in command; 3rd person singular
pluperfect active from praeficiō, praeficere, praefēcī,
praefectus
qui: who; plural masculine nominative of quis
quibus: which; plural dative or ablative of qui
rēgem: king; singular masculine accusative from rēx, rēgis
rēgiōne: region; singular feminine ablative from regiō, regiōnis
rēgiōnis: regions; singular feminine genitive from regiō,
regiōnis
rēgna: kingdoms; plural neuter accusative from rēgnum, rēgnī
relictā: having been left behind; singular feminine ablative
perfect passive participle from relinquō, relinquere, reliqui,
relictus
rēx: king; singular masculine nominative from rēx, rēgis
Sarrācēnūs: a muslim
Saxōnum: of the Saxons
se: himself
simul: at the same time as
sociīs: associates, companions; plural masculine ablative from
socius, sociī
tandem: finally
tenet: it holds; 3rd person singular present active from teneō,
tenēre, tenuī, tentus
tunc: then
urbēs: cities; plural feminine accusative from urbs, urbis

Hortātū Sarrācēnī cum sē memorātī¹
Hispānās urbēs quāsdam sibi subdere posse
Haud frūstrā spērāret, eō sua maxima coepit
Agmina per celsōs Wascōnum dūcere montēs.
Quī cum prīmā Pyreneī iuga iam superāsset,
Ad Pompēlōnem, quod fertur nōbile castrum
Esse Navarrōrum, veniēns id cooperat armīs;
Trāiciēnsque vadō fāmōsum flūmen Hibērum,
Caesāris² Augustī quandam dē nōmine dictam
Urbem praecipuam terrīs penetrāvit in illīs.

Acceptīs tamen obsidibus, quōs Ībinalarbī
Iam dictus pariterque³ suā dē gente fidēlēs
Illūstrēsque virī dederant, sīc inde recessit.
Ac Pompēlōnem rediēns, dēiēcerat⁴ eius
Ad terram mūrōs, fieret nē forte rebellis.

¹With the exhortation of the aforesaid Saracen, he hoped not in vain to be able to subdue to himself certain Spanish cities.

²He entered in those lands a certain city named after Caesar Augustus. The city is modern-day Zaragoza, which was called Caesaraugusta prior to the muslim invasion. The name Zaragoza derives from the second and following syllabes of Caesaraugusta. In the critical text the word is spelled *Cesaris*. Zaragoza lies by the Ebro river. The scansion on this line is difficult; my best solution is that *Caesāris* be scanned as a dactyl, which makes everything else fall into place.

³However having received hostages, which the already mentioned Sulayman, together with faithful and illustrious (men) from his own people, had given.

⁴And returning to Pamplona, he had thrown to the ground its walls, that there might not be rebellion. The *i* in *dēiēcerat* is consonantal, so its syllables are long-long-short-short.

ac: and	prīmū
acceptīs: having been accepted, received; plural ablative perfect passive participle from accipiō, accipere, accēpī, acceptus	Pyrēneī: of the Pyrenees mountains
ad: to, towards, at, according to	quāsdam: certain; plural masculine accusative of quis
agmina: marching armies; plural neuter accusative from agmen, agminis	quī: who; plural masculine nominative of quis
armīs: with weapons; plural neuter ablative from armum, armī	quod: which; singular neuter accusative of qui
Augusti: Augustus; (title of Octavius Caesar, Emperor, 27 BC-14 AD); of all emperors; singular masculine genitive from Augustus, Augusti	quōs: whom; plural masculine accusative of quis
Caesaris: of Caesar	rebellis: rebellious; singular common nominative from rebellis, rebellis, rebelle
castrū: castle, fort; singular neuter nominative from castrum, castrī	recessit: he withdrew; 3rd person singular perfect active from recēdō, recēdere, recessi, recessus
celsōs: high, tall; plural masculine accusative from celsus, celsa, celsum	rediēns: returning; singular nominative present participle from redēō, redire, redīvī(ii), reditus
cooperat: he had begun (to attack); 3rd person singular pluperfect active from coepio, coopere, coepi, coeptus	Sarrācēnī: of the Saracen (muslim)
coepit: he started; 3rd person singular present active	sē: himself
cum: with	sibi: to himself; singular dative of sē
dē: of, from, away from, down from	sīc: thus
dederat: they had given; 3rd person plural pluperfect active from dō, dare, dedi, datus	spērātō: he had hoped; 3rd person singular imperfect active subjunctive from spērō, spērāre, spērāvī, spērātus
dēiēcerat: he had thrown down, overthrew; 3rd person singular pluperfect active from deicio, deicere, dejeci, dejectus	sua: his; plural neuter accusative from suus
dictam: having been said; singular feminine accusative perfect passive participle from dicō, dicere, dīxi, dictus	subdēre: to place under; present active infinitive from subdō, subdere, subdīdī, subditus
dictus: having been said; singular masculine nominative perfect passive participle from dicō, dicere, dīxi, dictus	superāvīsset: he (might) have overcome; 3rd person singular pluperfect active subjunctive from superō, superāre, superāvī, superātus
dūcere: to lead; present active infinitive from dūcō, dūcere, dūxi, ductus	tamen: however
eiūs: his/her/its	terrām: land
eō: (because of) this; 3rd person singular ablative from is, ea, id	terrīs: lands; plural feminine ablative from terra, terrae
esse: to be	trāiciēns: transferring, transporting, passing through; singular nominative present participle from trāiciō, trāicere, trāiēcī, trāiectus
fāmōsum: famed; singular neuter accusative from famosus, famosa -um, famosior -or -us, famosissimus -a -um	urbēm: city; singular feminine accusative from urbs, urbis
fertur: it is said, related; 3rd person singular present passive from ferō, ferre, tuli, lātus	urbēs: cities; plural feminine accusative from urbs, urbis
fidēlēs: faithful persons, confidants; plural common nominative from fidēlis, fidēle, fidēlīor -or -us, fidēlīssimus -a -um	vadō: by means of the shallows; singular neuter ablative from vadūm, vadī
fieret: it happened; 3rd person singular imperfect active subjunctive from fiō, fierī, factus sum	veniēns: coming; singular nominative present participle from veniō, venire, vēnī, ventus
flūmen: river; singular neuter accusative from flūmen, flūminis	virī: man; plural masculine nominative from vir, virī
fortē: by chance	Wasconēs: of the Basques; variant spelling from Vasconēs
frūstrā: futile	
gente: people, nation; singular feminine ablative from gēns, gentis	
haud: not, not at all	
Hiberum: the Ebro River, which flows through Zaragoza (accusative case)	
Hispānās: Spanish, of Spain; plural feminine accusative from Hispanus, Hispana, Hispanum	
hortātū: encouragement, exhortation; singular neuter ablative from hortor, hortārī, hortātū sum	
iam: already, now, soon	
İbinalarbi: Sulayman ibn Yaqzan al-Kalbi al-Arabi, a muslim governor of Barcelona and Girona	
id: it (the castle in Pamplona)	
illīs: those; plural ablative from ille, illa, illud	
illūstrēs: illustrious; plural masculine nominative from illūstris, illūstre	
in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)	
inde: from there, since	
iuga: peaks, mountain ridges; plural neuter nominative from iugum, iugī	
maxima: very large; plural neuter accusative from māgnus, māgna -um, major -or -us, maximus -a -um	
memorātī: aforementioned, having been remembered; singular masculine genitive perfect passive participle from memorō, memorāre, memorāvī, memorātus	
montēs: mountains; plural masculine accusative from mōns, montis	
mūrōs: city wall; plural masculine accusative from mūrus, mūrī	
Navarrōrum: of the Kingdom of Navarre, a Basque kingdom	
nē: not	
nōbile: noble, famous; singular neuter nominative from nobilis, nōbile, nobilior -or -us, nobilissimus -a -um	
nōmīne: name; singular neuter ablative from nōmen, nōminis	
obsidibus: hostages; plural common ablative from obses, obsidis	
pariter: together	
penetrāvit: he entered, he penetrated; 3rd person singular perfect active from penetrō, penetrāre, penetrāvī, penetrātus	
per: through	
Pompēlonem: Pamplona, a Spanish city	
posse: to be able; present active infinitive from possum, posse, potūl, -	
praecipuam: particular, special; singular feminine accusative from praecipuus, praecipua, praecipuum	
prīma: first; singular feminine nominative from prīmus, prīma,	

Cumque¹ Pyreneī regressus ad intima saltūs,
Mīlite cum lassō² callēs trānscederet artōs
Īnsidiās eius summō sub vertice montis
Tendere Wascōnēs ausī, nova praelia temptant.
Dēnique postrēmōs populī rēgālis adortī,
Missilibus prīmō sternunt ex collibus altīs,
Et Francōs, quamvīs³ armīs animīsque priōrēs,
Impār fēcit et angustus locus īferiōrēs.
Rēx iam praecessit, tardumque remānserat agmen,
Cūra vehendārum⁴ quod rērum praepediēbat.

Fit⁵ pavor hinc exercitibus, subitōque tumultū
Turbantur, victrīx latrōnum turba nefanda
Ingentem rapuit praedam, plūrēsque necāvit.

¹It appears that the scansion of this line is SDSDDS.

²(When) with his weary soldier(s) he (Charlemagne) crossed the narrow path, the Basques dared to stage an ambush under the highest peak of the mountain, trying to wage new battles. mīlites is best translated as a collective singular: with weary soldiers.

³And the Franks who were below, although they were better (than the Basques) in arms and spirit, the narrow place made unequal (to the Basques).

⁴Already the king had proceeded (through the mountain pass) and the slow army had remained, which the care of carrying the things had delayed. The Basques attacked the baggage train at the rear of Charlemagne's army. This attack occurred at the Roncevaux Pass. A famous song, the Song of Roland, was later composed about the event.

⁵From here there was a fear amongst the army, and they were thrown into confusion by the sudden tumult, and the victorious nefarious band of robbers seized great plunder and killed many.

ad: to, towards, at, according to	participle from regredior, regredi, regressus sum
adorti: having been attacked; singular masculine genitive perfect participle from adorior, adoriri, adortus sum	remanserat: he had remained; 3rd person singular pluperfect active from remaneō, remanère, remānsi, remānsus
agmen: marching army; singular neuter nominative from agmen, agminis	rērum: of things; plural feminine genitive from rēs, rei
altis: high; plural masculine ablative from altus -a -um	rēx: king; singular masculine nominative from rēx, rēgis
angustus: small space, narrow passage, being boxed in; singular masculine nominative from angustus, angusta -um,	saltūs: of the narrow pass, mountain defile; singular masculine genitive from saltus, saltūs
angustior -or -us, angustissimus -a -um	sternunt: they cast down, scattered, covered; 3rd person plural present active from sternō, sternere, strāvī, strātus
animis: souls, minds, lives; plural feminine ablative from anima, animae	sub: below, under
armis: weapons; plural neuter ablative from armum, armī	subitō: suddenly
artōs: close, narrow; plural masculine accusative from artus, arta -um, artior -or -us, artissimus -a -um	summo: highest, greatest; singular masculine ablative from summus, summa, summum
ausi: having dared; plural masculine nominative perfect passive participle from audeō, audēre, ausus sum. audeō is semi-deponent, so we take the active meaning based on context.	tardum: slow; singular neuter nominative from tardus, tarda -um, tardior -or -us, tardissimus -a -um
callēs: paths; plural feminine accusative from callis, callis	temptant: they tried; 3rd person plural present active from temptō, temptāre, temptāvī, temptātus
collibus: hills; plural masculine ablative from collis, collis	tendere: to aim, plan, stretch, extend; present active infinitive from tendō, tendere, tetendī, tentus
cum: with	trānscederet: he was crossing over; 3rd person singular imperfect active subjunctive from trānscedō, trānscedere, trānscedēti, trānscedēns
cūra: care, concern, supervision; singular feminine nominative from cūra, cūrae	tumultū: uproar; singular masculine ablative from tumultus, tumultūs
dēnique: finally	turba: troop, band; singular feminine nominative from turba, turbae
eius: his/her/its	turbantur: they are disturbed, confused; 3rd person plural present passive from turbō, turbāre, turbāvī, turbātus
et: and	vehendārum: of carrying; plural feminine genitive future passive participle from vehō, vehere, vēxi, vectus
ex: out of, from	vertice: peak; singular masculine ablative from vertex, verticis
exercitibus: armies; plural masculine dative from exercitus, exercitūs	victrix: conquering; singular feminine nominative from victrix, which is a defective adjective that is only available in the feminine
fēcīt: he did; 3rd person singular perfect active from faciō, facere, fēci, factus	Wascōnēs: the Basques, a group that lived just west of the Pyrenees
fit: it happened, it occurred; 3rd person singular present active from fiō, fierī, factus sum	
Francōs: the Franks	
hinc: from here	
iam: already, now, soon	
impar: unequal; singular nominative from impar, (gen.), imparis	
inferiōrēs: lower; plural common accusative from inferus, infera, inferum	
ingēntēs: huge, enormous; singular common accusative from ingēns, ingentis (gen.), ingentior -or -us, ingentissimus -a -um	
īnsidiās: ambushes, plots; plural feminine accusative from īnsidia, īnsidiae	
intima: inmost parts; plural neuter accusative from intimus, intima, intimum	
lassō: tired, weary; singular masculine ablative from lassus, lassa, lassum	
latrōnum: of plunderers, robbers, brigands; plural masculine genitive from latrō, latrōnis	
locus: place; singular masculine nominative from locus, locī	
mīlite: soldier; singular masculine ablative from miles, mīlitis	
missilibus: missiles, javelins; plural ablative from missilis, missilis, missile	
montīs: of the mountain; singular masculine genitive from mōns, montis	
necāvit: it killed, destroyed; 3rd person singular perfect active from necō, necāre, necāvī, necātus	
nefanda: impious, wicked; singular feminine nominative from nefandus, nefanda, nefandum	
nova: new, inexperienced; singular feminine nominative from novus, nova -um, novior -or -us, novissimus -a -um	
pavor: fear, trembling; singular masculine nominative from pavor, pavōris	
plūrēs: more; plural common nominative from plus, (gen.), pluris	
populi: people, populace; singular masculine genitive from populus, populi	
postrēmōs: very last; plural masculine accusative from postremus, postrema, postremum	
praecessit: he proceeded, excelled; 3rd person singular perfect active from praecēdō, praecēdere, praecessī, praecessus	
praedam: plunder; singular feminine accusative from praeda, praedae	
praelia: battles; plural neuter accusative from praelium, praelī	
praeperiēbat: it was hindering, shackling, fettering; 3rd person singular imperfect active from praepediō, praepedire, praepediī, praepeditus	
prīmō: first; singular masculine dative from prīmus, prīma, prīnum	
priōrēs: prior, ahead, previous; plural common nominative from prior, prior, prius	
Pyrēnēi: of the Pyrenees Mountains	
quamvis: as much, as much as one wants, however	
quod: what; singular neuter nom. or acc. of qui	
rapuit: he seized, pillaged; 3rd person singular perfect active from rapio, rapere, rapūi, raptus	
rēgālis: regal, royal; singular common nominative from rēgālis, rēgālis, rēgāle	
regressus: return; singular masculine nominative perfect	

Namque palātīnī quīdam¹ cecidēre ministri,
Commendāta quibus rēgālis cōpia gāzae,
Praedōnēs² illōs spoliīs dītāvit opīmīs.
Hīs gestīs, hostēs vastī per dēvia saltūs
Fūgērunt, celeranter; erant quibus ardua montis
Abdita³ silvārum vallis loca nōta profundē
Quōs fuga dīlāpsōs⁴ investīgābilis et nox
Instāns ēripuit, sequerētur ut ultio⁵ nūlla.
Ac facinus tantum quoniam permānsit inultum,
Trīstia⁶ rēgālī subdūxit nūbila mentī,
Prōspera quam fēcēre prius complūra serēnam.

¹And certain palace ministers fell (in death), to whom the supplies of the royal treasuries had been committed.

²This is spelled *predones* in the critical text.

³These things being done, the vast host (army of the Basques) fled through devious (places) of the mountain pass quickly, to whom were deeply-known (nōta profundē) steep hidden places (ardua loca abdita) of the forests of the mountain valley.

⁴Whom, having slipped away by fleeing, the oncoming unsearchable night snatched away (from the Franks being able to find and pursue them). It appears that fugā ought to be in the ablative, yet to fit the meter it must have two short syllables.

⁵So that no vengeance followed. *ultiō* is often spelled with a macron, but cannot be here due to the meter. The line scans as SDDDDS.

⁶It drew sad clouds to the regal mind (of Charlemagne), which many properous (things) had previously made serene.

abdita: hidden; plural masculine nominative from *abditus* -a -um
 ac: and
 ardua: steep, high, lofty, difficult; plural neuter nominative from
 arduus, *ardua* -um, *arduor* -or -us, *arduissimus* -a -um
 cecidēre: they fell (in death); 3rd person plural perfect active
 from *cadō*, *cadere*, *cecidi*, *cāsus*
 celeranter: quickly;
 commendāta: having been entrusted; singular feminine
 nominative perfect passive participle from *commendō*,
 commendāre, *commendāvi*, *commendātus*
 complūra: many (things); plural neuter nominative from
 complūs, *compluris*
 cōpia: supplies, wealth; singular feminine nominative from
 cōpia, *cōpiae*
 dēvia: devious, out-of-the-way (places); plural neuter accusative
 from *dēvius* -a -um
 dilāpsōs: having slipped away; plural masculine accusative
 perfect participle from *dilābor*, *dilābi*, *dilāpus* sum
 dītāvit: it enriched; 3rd person singular perfect active from *dītō*,
 dītāre, *dītāvi*, *dītātus*
 erant: they were
 ēripuit: it snatched away; 3rd person singular perfect active
 from *ēripō*, *ēripere*, *ēripūi*, *ēreptus*
 et: and
 facinus: crime, outrage; singular neuter nominative from
 facinus, *facinoris*
 fēcēre: they did, made; 3rd person plural perfect active from
 faciō, *facere*, *feci*, *factus*
 fugā: by flight, escape; singular feminine ablative from *fuga*,
 fugae
 fūgērunt: they fled; 3rd person plural perfect active from *fugiō*,
 fugere, *fūgi*, *fugitus*
 gazaē: of the treasures; singular feminine genitive from *gaza*,
 gazae
 gestis: having been carried out; plural ablative perfect passive
 participle from *gerō*, *gerere*, *gessī*, *gestus*
 hīs: these; plural masculine ablative of *hic*, *haec*, *hoc*
 hostēs: enemies; plural common nominative from *hostis*, *hostis*
 illōs: those; plural masculine accusative from *ille*, *illa*, *illud*
 īstāns: oncoming; singular nominative present participle from
 instō, *instāre*, *instī*, -
 inultum: unavenged; singular neuter nominative from *inultus*,
 inulta, *inultum*
 investīgābilis: unsearchable; singular common nominative from
 investīgābilis, *investīgābilis*, *investigabile*
 loca: places; plural neuter nominative from *locum*, *locī*
 menti: to the mind; singular feminine dative from *mēns*, *mentis*
 ministri: ministers; plural masculine nominative from *minister*,
 ministrī
 montīs: of the mountain; singular masculine genitive from *mōns*,
 montis
 namque: for and in fact, on the other hand
 nōta: known; plural neuter nominative perfect passive participle
 from *nōscō*, *nōscere*, *nōvī*, *nōtus*
 nox: night; singular feminine nominative from *nox*, *noctis*
 nūbila: clouds; plural neuter accusative from *nūbilus*, *nūbila*,
 nūbūm
 nūlla: no, not any; singular feminine nominative from *nūllus*,
 nūlla, *nūllūm* (gen -ius)
 opīmīs: rich, well-fed, fat, fertile; plural ablative from *opīmus*,
 opīma, *opīmūm*
 palātīni: palace, imperial; plural masculine nominative from
 Palatinus, *Palatīna*, *Palatinūm*
 per: through
 permanīt: it remained; 3rd person singular perfect active from
 permanēō, *permanēre*, *permansi*, *permansus*
 praedōnēs: robbers, thieves; plural masculine accusative from
 praedō, *praedōnis*
 prius: before
 profundē: profoundly; adverb from *profundus*, *profunda*,
 profundūm
 prospera: favorable, prosperous; plural neuter nominative from
 prosperus, *prospera* -um, *prosperior* -or -us, *prosperīmūs*
 -a -um
 quam: how? how much?
 quī: who; plural masculine nominative of *quis*
 quibūs: to whom; plural ablative of *quī*
 quoniam: after
 quōs: whom; plural masculine accusative of *quis*
 rēgālī: regal, royal; singular dative from *rēgālis*, *rēgālis*, *rēgāle*
 rēgālis: regal, royal; singular common genitive from *rēgālis*,
 rēgālis, *rēgāle*
 saltūs: narrow passes, mountain defiles; plural masculine
 genitive from *saltus*, *saltūs*
 sequerētūr: it followed; 3rd person singular subjunctive
 imperfect from *sequor*, *sequī*, *secūtūs*
 serēnam: serene; singular feminine accusative from *serēnus*,
 serēna, *serēnum*
 silvārum: of forests; plural feminine genitive from *silva*, *silvae*

Aptum praetereā sē tempus habēre putantēs

Saxonēs ulcīscendī¹ quam plūrima dampna

Ā Francīs illāta sibī, quia rēx erat absēns,

Īnfēstō² Rhēnī petiērunt agmine lītus.

Quem³ trānsīre tamen nūllā ratiōne valentēs,

Francōrum terrās in eādem parte iacentēs⁴

Quā vēnēre nimis vastāre ferōciter ausī,

Ā mūrīs urbīs, quae dicta Diūtia nunc est,

Dōnec perveniās ubi Rhēnus cōnfluit īdem,

Lītoribusque ferēns fontēs Mūsella Liēī.

¹*And then the Saxons thinking to themselves (sē putantēs) the time to be apt to have revenge for the many damages brought to them by the Franks.*

²*With hostile army they sought the shore of the Rhine.*

³*Which, however, they were not able to cross by any way.*

⁴*They dared to excessively and ferociously ravage the lands of the Franks lying on the same part (of the Rhine) to which they had come.*

ā: from, out of, by, since	infinitive from <i>vāstō</i> , <i>vāstāre</i> , <i>vāstāvī</i> , <i>vāstātus</i>
absēns: absent; singular masculine nominative from <i>absēns</i> , (gen.), <i>absentis</i>	<i>vēnēre</i> : they came; 3rd person plural perfect active from <i>veniō</i> , <i>venire</i> , <i>vēnī</i> , <i>ventus</i>
agmine: marching army; singular neuter ablative from <i>agmen</i> , <i>agminis</i>	
aptum: apt, suitable, ready; singular neuter accusative from <i>aptus</i> -a -um	
ausī: having dared; plural masculine nominative perfect passive participle from <i>audeō</i> , <i>audēre</i> , <i>ausus sum</i> . <i>audeō</i> is semi-deponent, so we take the active meaning based on context.	
cōfluit: it flows together; 3rd person singular present active from <i>cōfluo</i> , <i>cōfluere</i> , <i>cōflūxi</i> , <i>cōfluxus</i>	
dampna: damages, injuries; plural neuter nominative from <i>dampnum</i> , <i>dampni</i>	
dictā: is called, having been said; singular feminine nominative perfect passive participle from <i>dicō</i> , <i>dicere</i> , <i>dixi</i> , <i>dictus</i>	
Dūtia: Duisburg: a city along the Rhine, about 100 miles north of the confluence of the Lahn and Moselle, which occurs at Koblenz	
dōnec: while, as long as, until	
eādem: the same, singular feminine ablative	
erat: he was; 3rd person singular imperfect active from <i>sum</i> , <i>esse</i> , <i>fui</i> , <i>futūrus</i>	
est: he is; 3rd person singular present active from <i>sum</i> , <i>esse</i> , <i>fui</i> , <i>futūrus</i>	
ferēns: bringing, bearing; singular nominative present participle from <i>ferō</i> , <i>ferre</i> , <i>tuli</i> , <i>lātus</i>	
ferōciter: ferociously	
fontēs: headwaters, fountains; plural masculine nominative from <i>fōns</i> , <i>fontis</i>	
Francis: the Franks	
Francōrum: of the Franks	
habēre: to have; present active infinitive from <i>habeō</i> , <i>habēre</i> , <i>habuī</i> , <i>habitus</i>	
īdem: the same	
iacentēs: laying; plural common nominative present participle from <i>iaceō</i> , <i>iacēre</i> , <i>iacuī</i> , <i>iactus</i>	
illāta: having been brought in; plural neuter nominative perfect passive participle from <i>inferō</i> , <i>inferre</i> , <i>intuli</i> , <i>illātus</i>	
in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)	
īnfēstō: unsafe, dangerous, hostile; singular neuter ablative from <i>īfestus</i> -a -um	
Liēi: the Lahn, a tributary of the Rhine	
litoribus: beaches, shores; plural neuter ablative from <i>lītus</i> , <i>lītoris</i>	
lītus: beach, shore; singular neuter accusative from <i>lītus</i> , <i>lītoris</i>	
mūris: city walls; plural masculine ablative from <i>mūrus</i> , <i>mūrī</i>	
Mūsella: Moselle, a tributary of the Rhine	
nīmis: too much, extremely	
nūllā: no, none, not any; singular feminine ablative from <i>nūllus</i> , <i>nūlla</i> , <i>nūlūm</i> (gen -ius)	
nunc: now	
parte: part; singular feminine ablative from <i>par</i> , <i>partis</i>	
perveniās: you arrive; 2nd person singular present active subjunctive from <i>perveniō</i> , <i>pervenire</i> , <i>pervēnī</i> , <i>perventus</i>	
petiērunt: they sought for; 3rd person plural perfect active from <i>petō</i> , <i>petere</i> , <i>petivī</i> , <i>petitus</i>	
plūrima: very many; plural neuter nominative from <i>multus</i> , <i>multa</i> -um, -, <i>plūrimus</i> -a -um	
praetereā: and also	
putantēs: thinking; plural common nominative present participle from <i>putō</i> , <i>putāre</i> , <i>putāvī</i> , <i>putātus</i>	
quā: in which; singular female ablative of <i>qui</i>	
quae: which; singular feminine nominative	
quam: how? how much?	
quem: which, singular masculine accusative of <i>qui</i>	
quia: because	
ratioē: reason; singular feminine ablative from <i>ratiō</i> , <i>ratiōnis</i>	
rēx: king; singular masculine nominative from <i>rēx</i> , <i>rēgis</i>	
Rhēni: the Rhine; singular masculine genitive from <i>Rhēnus</i> , <i>Rhēnī</i>	
Rhēnus: the Rhine; singular masculine nominative from <i>Rhēnus</i> , <i>Rhēnī</i>	
Saxonēs: the Saxons	
sē: themselves	
sibi: to himself; singular dative of <i>se</i>	
tamen: however	
tempus: time, period; singular neuter accusative from <i>tempus</i> , <i>temporis</i>	
terrās: lands; plural feminine accusative from <i>terra</i> , <i>terrae</i>	
trānsire: to go over, to cross; present active infinitive from <i>trāseō</i> , <i>trānsire</i> , <i>trānsivi(iū)</i> , <i>trānsitus</i>	
ubi: where, when if	
ulciscēndi: avenging, punishing; singular masculine genitive future participle from <i>ulciscor</i> , <i>ulciscī</i> , <i>ultus sum</i>	
urbis: city; singular feminine genitive from <i>urbs</i> , <i>urbis</i>	
valentēs: being healthy, able, strong; plural common nominative present participle from <i>valeo</i> , <i>valere</i> , <i>valui</i> , <i>valitus</i>	
vāstāre: to lay waste, to devastate, to ravage; present active infinitive from <i>vāstō</i> , <i>vāstāre</i> , <i>vāstāvī</i> , <i>vāstātus</i>	

Cūnctās quās poterant vīllās invādere, flammīs
Trādiderant. Ipsīs etiam nōn īra pepercit
Ecclesiīs¹, nec erat hominum caedis modus ūllus.
Nōn aliquod sexūs, aetātis, condiciōnis
Ūllīus furor immītis² discrīmen agēbat;
Omnia sed ferrum vel edāx cōnsūmpserat³ ignis.
Hinc nōn praedandī studiō⁴, sed ut ultio⁵ quaedam
In Francōs fieret, hoc eōs gessisse probātur.

¹Spelled *Aecclesiis* in the critical text. The second syllable is short for it to fit the meter; the line scans as DDDSDS.

²*The cruel furor made no distinction, not of sex or age or any other condition.*

³*But the sword or greedy fire had consumed all.*

⁴*Hence not out of eagerness of plundering, but in order that a certain vengeance might occur against the Franks, it is proved that they had done this.*

⁵Normally spelled *ultiō*; the Saxon poet appears to use it with a short final syllable.

aetātis: of age; singular feminine genitive from *aetās*, *aetātis*
agēbat: it carried out; 3rd person singular imperfect active from
 agō, *agere*, *ēgī*, *āctus*
aliquod: anyone; neuter singular nominative or accusative from
 aliqui
caedis: of slaughter; singular feminine genitive from *caedis*,
 caedis
condicōnis: condition; singular feminine genitive from *condicō*,
 condicōnis
cōnsūmpserat: it had consumed; 3rd person singular pluperfect
 active from *cōnsūmō*, *cōnsūmere*, *cōnsūmpsī*, *cōnsūmptus*
cūntās: all; whole; plural feminine accusative from *cūnctus*,
 cūnta, *cūnctum*
discrimen: distinction, division; singular neuter nominative from
 discrimen, *discriminis*
ecclēsiās: churches; plural feminine dative from *ecclēsia*,
 ecclēsiae
edāx: greedy, glutinous, voracious, destructive; singular
 nominative from *edāx*, *edācis* (gen.), *edācior* -or -us,
 edācissimus -a -um
eōs: to them; plural masculine accusative from *is*, *ea*, *id*
erat: he was; 3rd person singular imperfect active from *sum*,
 esse, *fui*, *futurus*
etiam: still
ferrum: iron; singular neuter nominative from *ferrum*, *ferri*
fieret: it might happen; 3rd person singular imperfect active
 subjunctive from *fiō*, *fieri*, *factus sum*
flammis: flames; plural feminine dative from *flamma*, *flammae*
Francōs: the Franks
furor: frenzy, rage, madness; singular masculine nominative
 from *furor*, *furōris*
gessisse: to have born, carried; perfect active infinitive from
 gerō, *gerere*, *gessi*, *gestus*
hinc: hence, from here
hoc: this; singular neuter accusative of *hic*, *haec*, *hoc*
hominum: of persons, of men; plural masculine genitive from
 homō, *hominis*
īgnis: fire; singular masculine nominative from *īgnis*, *īgnis*
immitis: savage, cruel; singular common nominative from
 immitis, *immīte*, *immītior* -or -us, *immītissimus* -a -um
in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
invādere: to invade; present active infinitive from *invādō*,
 invādere, *invāsī*, *invāsus*
ipsīs: itself; plural dative from *ipse*, *ipsa*, *ipsum*
īra: anger; singular feminine nominative from *īra*, *īrae*
modus: limit; singular masculine nominative from *modus*, *modī*
nec: nor, not either
nōn: not
omnia: all, every; plural neuter accusative from *omnis*, *omnis*,
 omne
pepercit: it spared, saved; 3rd person singular perfect active
 from *parcō*, *parcere*, *pepercī*, *parsus*
poterant: they were able to; 3rd person plural imperfect active
 from *possum*, *posse*, *potuī* -
praedandi: of pillaging; genitive gerund from *praedor*, *praedārī*,
 praedātus
probātur: it is shown, proved; 3rd person singular present
 passive from *probō*, *probāre*, *probāvī*, *probātus*
quaedam: a certain; singular feminine nominative from *quīdam*
quās: who; plural female accusative of *quis*
sed: but
sexūs: sex (male or female); singular masculine genitive from
 sexus, *sexūs*
studiō: eagerness; singular neuter ablative from *studium*, *studiī*
trādiderant: they had handed over; 3rd person plural pluperfect
 active from *trādō*, *trādere*, *trādī*, *trādītus*
ūllīus: of any; singular genitive from *ūllus*, *ūlla*, *ūllum* (gen -ius)
ūllus: any; singular masculine nominative from *ūllus*, *ūlla*, *ūllum*
 (gen -ius)
ultiō: vengeance, revenge; singular feminine nominative from
 ultiō, *ultiōnis*
ut: so that
vel: or
villās: houses; plural feminine accusative from *villa*, *villae*

Hoc rēx Hispānīs didicit¹ regressus ab hōrīs.
Tunc orientālēs² Francōs nec nōn Alamannōs
Obvia ferre iubet statim Saxonibus arma.
Quōs cum iam patriam redeuntēs īsequerentur,
In Baddanfeldun—sīc est locus ille vocātus—
Ādernam iuxtā fluvium cōstanter in ipsōs
Irruerant, nūtūque³ Deī quem crīmina tanta
In populō commissa suō dampnāre decēbat,
Saxonēs tantā cecidērunt strāge perēmptī,
Ut dē praegrandī superessent agmine pauci.

¹*The king learned this, having returned from the time with the Spaniards.*

²*Then he ordered the eastern Franks, and also the Alamanni, to immediately bear the available weapons against the Saxons.*

³*And by the will of God it was fitting for such crimes, having been committed amongst his people, to be punished.*

ab: from, out of, by, since
 Adernam: the Eder river, which flows in North Rhine-Westphalia
 agmine: marching army; singular neuter ablative from agmen,
 agminis
 Alamannos: the Alamanni, a confederation of Germanic tribes
 incorporated into the Frankish kingdom by Clovis I in 496
 AD.
 arma: weapons; plural neuter accusative from armum, armī
 Baddenfeldun: Battenfeld, Germany
 cecidērunt: they fell; 3rd person plural perfect active from cadō,
 cadere, cecidī, cāsus
 commissa: having been committed; singular feminine
 nominative perfect passive participle from committō,
 committere, commisi, commissus
 cōnstanter: constantly
 crīmina: judicial decisions, verdicts; plural neuter accusative
 from crīmen, crīminis
 cum: with
 dampnārē: to condemn; present active infinitive variant spelling
 from damnō, damnārē, damnāvī, damnātus
 dē: of, from, away from, down from
 decēbat: it was fitting; 3rd person singular imperfect active
 from decet, decere, decuit, -
 Deī: of god; singular masculine genitive from Deus, Dei
 didicit: he learned; 3rd person singular perfect active from
 discō, discere, didici, discitus
 est: he is; 3rd person singular present active from sum, esse,
 fui, futūrus
 ferre: to bring, to bear; person present active from ferō, ferre,
 tuli, lātus
 fluvium: river; singular masculine accusative from fluvius, fluvī
 Francōs: the Franks
 Hispānīs: Hispanics; plural ablative from Hispanus, Hispana,
 Hispanum
 hoc: this; singular neuter accusative of hic, haec, hoc
 hōris: time, seasons, hours; plural feminine ablative from hōra,
 hōrae
 iam: already, now, soon
 ille: that; singular masculine nominative from ille, illa, illud
 in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
 insequerentur: they had followed; 3rd person plural subjunctive
 imperfect from insequor, insequī, insequitūs
 ipsōs: themselves
 irrūerant: they had forced their way in; 3rd person plural
 pluperfect active from irrūō, irrūere, irrūi, irrūtus
 iubet: he commands; 3rd person singular present active from
 iubeō, iubēre, iussi, iussus
 iuxtā: near, nearly
 locus: place; singular masculine nominative from locus, locī
 nec nōn: and also
 nōn: not
 nūtū: will, command, will; singular masculine ablative from
 nūtus, nūtūs
 obvia: at hand, available; plural neuter accusative from obvius
 -a -um
 orientālēs: eastern; plural common nominative from orientālis,
 orientālis, orientāle
 patriamland: father; singular feminine accusative from patria,
 patriae
 pauci: few; plural masculine nominative from paucus, pauci
 perempti: having been killed, destroyed; plural masculine
 nominative perfect passive participle from perimo,
 perimere, peremi, peremptus
 populō: peoples, populaces; singular masculine ablative from
 populus, populi
 praegrandī: very large (army); singular masculine ablative from
 praegrandis, praegrande
 quem: which, singular masculine accusative of qui
 quōs: whom; plural masculine accusative of quis
 redeunēs: returning; plural common nominative present
 participle from redeō, redire, redivī(iī), redditus
 regressus: having returned; singular masculine nominative
 perfect participle from regredior, regredī, regressus sum
 rēx: king; singular masculine nominative from rēx, rēgis
 Saxonēs: the Saxons
 Saxōnibus: the Saxons
 sīc: thus
 statim: immediately
 strāge: overthrow, destruction; singular feminine ablative from
 strāgēs, strāgis
 suō: their; singular ablative of suus
 superessent: they had survived, been left over; 3rd person
 plural imperfect active subjunctive from supersum,
 superesse, superfui, superfutūrus
 tantā: so much, so great; singular feminine ablative from tantus,
 tanta, tantum
 tunc: then
 ut: so that
 vocātus: est vocātus = was called; singular masculine
 nominative perfect passive participle from vocō, vocāre,
 vocāvī, vocātus

Annō 779

Vēre¹ novō Carolus causā poscente peragrāns

Gallōrum quondam terrās, ad Wirciniācum

Accessit vīcum. Quō tunc occurrit eīdem

Dux Spōlētānus², Hildībrandus vocitātus.

Quī pretiōsa³ ferēns īsignī mūnera rēgī,

Ad sua⁴ cum magnō satis est dīmissus honōre.

At rēx intentē meditāns invādere terrās

Saxōnum, citius Rhēnum trāiēcerat⁵ amnem.

Cui⁶ sē spē vānā gēns ipsa resistere posse

Cōfidēns, pariter sūmptīs occurrerat armīs,

In quōdam collēcta locō Bōcholt vocitātō.

¹With the new spring, Charlemagne, as circumstances demanded, traveling the lands, formerly of the Gauls, came to the town of Verzenay.

²Hildeprand was the Duke of Spoleto from 774 to 789. The Duchy of Spoleto is located in Italy. There had been a dispute between Pope Hadrian I and Charlemagne over who had suzerainty over that duchy; this was likely the motivating factor for Hildeprand to go to France with treasure to meet with Charlemagne.

³Spelled *preciōsa* in the critical text.

⁴To his (lands, places) he was dismissed with great honor. Here *sua* must be plural neuter accusative: it cannot be ablative based on the meter, and must be accusative since it is the object of *ad*. What it refers to is implied; *loca* (places) a reasonable option.

⁵The *i* in *trāiēcerat* is consonantal, so its syllables are long-long-short-short.

⁶To whom, confident in themselves with vain hope to be able to resist, the people themselves, likewise having taken up arms, had run, collected into a certain place called Bocholt.

accessit: he approached; 3rd person singular perfect active from accédō, accédere, accessi, accessus	vocitātō: having been called; singular masculine ablative perfect passive participle from vocitō, vocitāre, vocitāvī, vocitātus
ad: to, towards, at, according to	vocitātus: having been called; singular masculine nominative perfect passive participle from vocitō, vocitāre, vocitāvī, vocitātus
ammē: river; singular masculine accusative from amnis, amnis	Wirciniacum: Verzenay, a town in north-eastern France
annō: year; singular masculine ablative from annus, anni	
armī: weapons; plural neuter ablative from armum, armī	
at: and	
Bocholt: Bocholt, a city in North Rhine-Westphalia	
Carolus: Charlemagne, AD 748-814, King of the Franks and Emperor of the Western Roman Empire, member of the Carolingian Dynasty	
causā: cause, reason; singular feminine ablative from causa, causae	
citius: swifter; singular neuter accusative from citus, cita -um, citior -or -us, citissimus -a -um	
collēcta: having gathered; singular feminine nominative perfect passive participle from colligō, colligere, collēgi, collēctus	
cōfidēns: trusting, believing; singular nominative present participle from cōfidō, cōfidere, cōfisus sum	
cui: to whom; singular dative from quis	
cum: with	
dīmissus: he was sent away (est omitted for metrical reasons); singular masculine nominative perfect passive participle from dīmittō, dīmittere, dīmisi, dīmissus	
dux: leader; singular masculine nominative from dux, ducis	
eī: to him, her, or it; singular dative from is, ea, id	
ferēns: bringing, bearing; singular nominative present participle from ferō, ferre, tuli, lātus	
Gallōrum: of the Gauls; plural masculine genitive from Gallus, Galli	
gēns: people, clan, nation; singular feminine nominative from gēns, gentis	
Hildibrandus: Hildeprand, Duke of Spoleto from 774 to 789	
honore: honor; singular masculine ablative from honor, honōris	
in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)	
īsigni: distinguished; singular dative from īsignis, īsignis, insigne	
intēntē: intently, attentively	
invādere: to invade; present active infinitive from invādō, invādere, invāsī, invāsus	
ipsa: itself; singular feminine nominative from ipse, ipsa, ipsum	
locō: place; singular masculine ablative from locus, loci	
māgnō: large; singular masculine ablative from māgnus, māgna -um, major -or -us, maximus -a -um	
meditāns: thinking about; singular masculine nominative present participle from meditor, meditārī, meditātum	
mūnera: gifts; plural neuter accusative from mūnus, mūneris	
novō: new; singular masculine ablative from novus, nova -um, novior -or -us, novissimus -a -um	
occurrerat: he had run; 3rd person singular pluperfect active from occurrō, occurrere, occurri, occursus	
occurrit: he met, ran; 3rd person singular perfect from occurrō, occurrere, occurri, occursus	
pariter: likewise, together	
peragrāns: traveling over; singular nominative present participle from peragrō, peragrāre, peragrāvī, peragrātus	
pōscēnte: demanding; singular ablative present participle from pōscō, pōscere, popōscī, -	
posse: to be able; present active infinitive from possum, posse, potui, -	
pretiōsa: precious; plural neuter accusative from pretiōsus, pretiosa -um, pretiōsior -or -us, pretiōsissimus -a -um	
quī: who; singular masculine nominative of quis	
quōdam: in a certain; singular ablative of quidam	
quondam: formerly, at one time	
rēgī: king; singular masculine dative from rēx, rēgis	
resistere: to resist; present active infinitive from resistō, resistere, restitū, -	
rēx: king; singular masculine nominative from rēx, rēgis	
Rhēnum: the Rhine; singular masculine accusative from Rhēnus, Rhēnī	
satis: enough	
Saxōnum: of the Saxons	
sē: themselves	
spē: hope; singular feminine ablative from spēs, speī	
Spōlētānus: of the Duchy of Spoleto, located in the region of Umbria, Italy	
sua: his; plural neuter accusative from suus	
sūmptīs: having been taken up; plural ablative perfect passive participle from sūmō, sūmere, sūmpsī, sūmptus	
terrās: lands; plural feminine accusative from terra, teruae	
traiēcerat: they had transferred, transported; 3rd person singular pluperfect active from traiēciō, traiēcere, traiēcī, traiēctus	
tunc: then	
vānā: empty, vain; singular feminine ablative from vānus, vāna, vānum	
vēre: spring; singular neuter ablative from vēr, vēris	
vicum: village; singular masculine accusative from vīcus, vīcī	

Sed cum coepissent¹ aciē cōflīgere, statim
Terga dedit, numerō Francōrum territa grandī.
Accēpit tunc Westfälōs in dēditiōnem.
Prōgressusque dehinc, Wisuram pervēnit ad amnem,
Atque diēs aliquot mānsit statiōne² locāta.
Angariōs sed et Ostfālhōs ad sē venientēs
Prōmissam firmāre fidem, quā sēmet eīdem
Subiectōs³ fore spondēbant, animōque fidēlēs,
Obsidibusque datīs sacrāmentīsque coēgit.
Hīs gestīs rēx Wormaciam remeāvit ad urbem.

¹But, having had started to fight in a battle line, suddenly they (the Saxon people, refers to gens on the previous page) turned their backs, having been terrified by the great number of Franks.

²Spelled *stacione* in the critical text.

³*Subiectōs* has a consonantal *i* and consists of three long syllables.

accēpit: he received; 3rd person singular perfect active from
accipiō, accipere, accēpi, acceptus
aciē: battle line; singular feminine ablative from aciēs, aciēī
ad: to, towards, at, according to
aliquot: quite a lot
amnem: river; singular masculine accusative from amnis, amnis
Angariōs: the Angarians, a Saxon tribe
animō: soul, mind, live; singular masculine ablative from
animus, animi
atque: and
coēgit: he collected, he forced; 3rd person singular perfect
active from cōgō, cōgere, coēgi, coāctus
coepisset: they (might) have had started; 3rd person plural
pluperfect active subjunctive from coepio, coopere, coepi,
coepitus
cōfligere: to fight; present active infinitive from cōfligō,
cōfligere, cōflīxi, cōflictus
cum: with
datīs: having been given; plural ablative past passive participle
from do, dare, dedi, datus
dedit: he gave; 3rd person singular perfect active from dō, dare,
didi, datus
dēditiōnem: surrender, capitulation; singular feminine
accusative from dēditiō, dēditiōnis
dehinc: from now on, from this place
diēs: day; singular common accusative from diēs, diēī
eī: to him, her, or it; singular dative from is, ea, id
et: and
fidēlēs: faithful persons, confidants; plural common accusative
from fidēlis, fidēle, fidēlior -or -us, fidēlissimus -a -um
fidēm: faith; singular feminine accusative from fidēs, fidēī
firmāre: to harden, confirm; present active infinitive from firmō,
firmāre, firmāvi, firmātus
fore: to be; future active infinitive from sum, esse, fuī, futūrus
Francōrum: of the Franks
gestīs: having been carried out; plural ablative perfect passive
participle from gerō, gerere, gessī, gestus
grandi: great, grand, imposing; singular ablative from grandis,
grandis, grande
hīs: to these; plural masculine ablative of hic, haec, hoc
in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
locātā: having been stationed; singular feminine ablative perfect
passive participle from locō, locāre, locāvī, locātus
mānsit: he remained; 3rd person singular perfect active from
maneō, manēre, mānsi, mānsus
numerō: number, division, troop; singular masculine ablative
from numerus, numerī
obsidibus: hostages; plural common ablative from obses, obsidis
Ostfalhōs: Eastphalians, members of a Saxon tribe
pervēnit: he arrived; 3rd person singular perfect active from
perveniō, pervenire, pervēnī, perventus
prōgressus: having advanced; singular masculine nominative
perfect participle from prōgredior, prōgredi, prōgressus
sum
prōmissam: having been promised; singular feminine accusative
perfect passive participle from prōmittō, prōmittere,
prōmissi, prōmissus
quā: what; singular female ablative of qui
remeāvit: he returned; 3rd person singular perfect active from
remeō, remeāre, remeāvī, remeātus
rēx: king; singular masculine nominative from rēx, rēgis
sacrāmentūs: sacraments; plural neuter ablative from
sacrāmentum, sacrāmentī
sēmet: themselves (-met is an intensifier)
sed: but
spondēbant: they were promising; 3rd person plural imperfect
active from spondeō, spondēre, spoondī, spōnsus
statim: immediately
statiōne: outpost, station; singular feminine ablative from statiō,
statiōnis
subiectōs: having been subjected; plural masculine accusative
perfect passive participle from subicio, subicere, subjeci,
subjectus
terga: backs; plural neuter accusative from tergum, tergī
terrīta: having been frightened; singular feminine nominative
perfect passive participle from terreō, terrēre, terrūi,
terrītus
tunc: then
urbē: city; singular feminine accusative from urbs, urbīs
venientēs: coming; plural common nominative present participle
from veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventus
Westfalōs: Westphalians, members of a Saxon tribe
Wisuram: the River Weser, the second longest river in Germany
Wormacia: Worms, a city in Germany; singular feminine
nominative from Wormacia, Wormaciae

Annō 780

Inde movēns ūpōrtūnō¹ sua tempore castra,
Saxōnum rūrsus properāverat in regiōnem.
Ēresburg pīmō petiit, post haec ubi fontēs
Lyppia flūmen habet, perplūrima² dispositūrus
In castrīs aliquot fertur³ mānsisse diēbus.
Hinc orientis⁴ iter sūmēns, ad flūmen Ovaccrum
Vēnit, et eiusdem gentis quam maxima turba
Illūc praeceptō pārēns occurrerat, atque
Crēdere sē Chrīstō simulāns baptismā recēpit.

¹From there moving his camp at an opportune time.

²Planning to arrange many things.

³It is said he remained in the camp for many days.

⁴From here taking a trip eastward.

ad: to, towards, at, according to
 aliquot: quite a lot
 annō: year; singular masculine ablative from *annus*, *annī*
 atque: and
 baptisma: baptism; plural neuter accusative from *baptismum*,
 baptismī
 castra: forts; plural neuter accusative from *castrum*, *castrī*
 castris: forts; plural neuter ablative from *castrum*, *castrī*
 Chrīstō: Christ
 crēdere: to believe; present active infinitive from *credo*,
 credere, *creddī*, *credītus*
 diēbus: days; plural common ablative from *diēs*, *diēī*
 dispositūrus: for arranging; singular masculine nominative
 future participle from *dispōnō*, *dispōnere*, *disposūi*,
 dispositus
 eius: his/her/its
 Erēsbūrg: a Saxon refuge castle near modern-day
 Obermarsberg
 et: and
 fertur: it is said; 3rd person singular present passive from *ferō*,
 ferre, *tuli*, *lātus*
 flūmen: river; singular neuter nominative from *flūmen*, *flūminis*
 fontēs: headwaters, fountains; plural masculine accusative from
 fōns, *fontis*
 gentis: of the people, clan, nation; singular feminine genitive
 from *gēns*, *gentis*
 habet: he has; 3rd person singular present active from *habeō*,
 habere, *habui*, *habitus*
 haec: these; plural neuter accusative from *hic*, *haec*, *hoc*
 hinc: from here
 illūc: over there
 in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
 inde: from there, since
 iter: journey, trip; singular neuter accusative from *iter*, *itineris*
 Lyppia: the Lippe, a river in modern-day Rhine-Westphalia,
 Germany
 mānsisse: to have remained; perfect active infinitive from
 maneō, *manēre*, *mānsī*, *mānsus*
 maxima: very big, biggest; singular feminine nominative from
 māgnus, *māgna* -um, major -or -us, *maximus* -a -um
 movēns: moving; singular nominative present participle from
 moveō, *movēre*, *mōvī*, *mōtus*
 occurrerat: he had run; 3rd person singular pluperfect active
 from *occurrō*, *occurrerē*, *occurrī*, *occursus*
 oportūnō: opportune; singular masculine ablative from
 oportūnus, *oportūna* -um, *oportunior* -or -us,
 oportunissimus -a -um
 orientis: East; singular masculine genitive from *oriēns*, *orientis*
 Ovaccrum: probably the Oker River, a tributary of the River
 Aller, in Lower Saxony
 pārēns: obeying; singular nominative present participle from
 pāreō, *pārēre*, *pāruī*, *pārēns*
 petīvit: he asked for; 3rd person singular perfect active from
 petō, *petere*, *petīvī*, *petītus*
 plūrima: very many; singular feminine nominative from *multus*,
 multa -um, -, *plūrimus* -a -um
 post: behind, after, since
 praeceptō: having been ordered; singular masculine ablative
 perfect passive participle from *praecipiō*, *praecipere*,
 praecepī, *praeceptus*
 prīmō: first; singular masculine ablative from *prīmus*, *prīma*,
 prīnum
 properāverat: he hurried; 3rd person singular pluperfect active
 from *properō*, *properāre*, *properāvī*, *properātus*
 quam: how? how much?
 recēpit: he received; 3rd person singular perfect active from
 recipiō, *recipere*, *recēpī*, *receptus*
 regionēm: region; singular feminine accusative from *regiō*,
 regiōnis
 rūrsus: backwards, on the flipside
 Saxōnum: of the Saxons
 sē: themselves
 simulāns: feigning, simulating; singular nominative present
 participle from *simulō*, *simulāre*, *simulāvī*, *simulātus*
 sua: his; plural neuter accusative from *suus*
 sūmēns: taking up; singular nominative present participle from
 sūmō, *sūmēre*, *sūmpsī*, *sūmptus*
 tempore: time, period; singular neuter ablative from *tempus*,
 temporis
 turba: crowd; singular feminine nominative from *turba*, *turbæ*
 ubī: where, when if
 vēnit: he came; 3rd person singular present active from *veniō*,
 venire, *vēnī*, *ventus*

Indeque¹ festīnus pergēns, ibi castra locāvit,
Albia quā grandis fluvius miscētur et Ōra.
Nam rēs Saxōnum voluit compōnere, nec nōn
Sclāvōrum, medius quōs Albia dīvidit amnis.
Citrā³ Saxonēs dēgunt, in lītore vērō
Sclāvōrum pāgāna manet gēns ulteriōrī.

Dispositīs sānē rēbus prō tempore cūnctīs⁴,
Ad sēdēs tandem studuit remeāre paternās.

¹And from there continuing on quickly, he stationed a camp there, in the place where the grand river Elbe is mixed with the Ohre river (alternatively, the shore).

²For he wanted to arrange the things of the Saxons, and also of the Slavs, whom divides in the middle with the River Elbe.

³On this side the Saxons live, and on beyond the shore dwell the pagan Slavs.

⁴Having arranged everything well for (that) time.

ad: to, towards, at, according to
Albia: of the River Elbe; variant spelling from Albis, Albis
amnis: river; singular masculine genitive from amnis, amnis
castra: forts; plural neuter accusative from castrum, castri
citrā: on this side
compōnere: to put together; present active infinitive from
 compōnō, compōnere, composū, compositus
cūnctis: all, whole; plural ablative from cūnctus, cūncta,
 cūnctum
dēgunt: they live; 3rd person plural present active from dēgō,
 dēgere, dēgi, -
dispositū: having been arranged, distributed; plural ablative
 perfect passive participle from dispōnō, dispōnere,
 disposui, dispositus
dīvidit: it divides; 3rd person singular present active from
 dividō, dīvidere, divisi, divisus
et: and
festinus: swift, fast, hastening; singular masculine nominative
 from festinus, festina, festinum
fluvius: river; singular masculine nominative from fluvius, fluvii
gēns: people, clan, nation; singular feminine nominative from
 gēns, gentis
grandis: great, grand, imposing; singular common nominative
 from grandis, grandis, grande
ibi: there, then
in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
inde: from there, since
litore: beach, shore; singular neuter ablative from litus, litoris
locāvit: he stationed; 3rd person singular perfect active from
 locō, locāre, locāvī, locātus
manet: it (the Slavic people) remains; 3rd person singular
 present active from maneō, manēre, mānsi, mānsus
medius: middle; singular masculine nominative from medius,
 media, medium
mīscētur: it is mixed; 3rd person singular present passive from
 misceō, mīscēre, miscuī, mixtus
nam: yes, truly
nec nōn: and also
nōn: see nec nōn
Ōra: likely means the Ohre river, a left tributary to Elbe;
 singular feminine nominative
pāgāna: pagan; singular feminine nominative from paganus,
 pagana, paganum
paternās: paternal (fatherland); plural feminine accusative from
 paternus, paterna, paternum
pergēns: continuing on; singular nominative present participle
 from pergō, pergere, perrēxī, perrēctus
prō: for, in favor of, before, in place of
quā: in which; singular female ablative of qui
quōs: whom; plural masculine accusative of quis
rēbus: things; plural feminine ablative from rēs, reī
remeāre: to come back, return; present active infinitive from
 remeō, remeāre, remeāvī, remeātus
rēs: things; singular feminine accusative from rēs, reī
sānē: healthfully, soundly; adverb from sānus, sāna, sānum
Saxonēs: the Saxons
Saxōnum: of the Saxons
sēdēs: residence, habitation; plural feminine accusative from
 sēdēs, sēdis
studuit: was eager for; 3rd person singular perfect active from
 studeō, studēre, studuī, -
tandem: finally
tempore: time, period; singular neuter ablative from tempus,
 temporis
ulteriōri: farther, last; singular ablative from - , - , ulterior -or -us,
 ultimus -a -um
Sclāvōrum: of the Slavs
vērō: truly, even so, still
voluit: he wanted; 3rd person singular perfect active from volō,
 velle, voluī, -

Tum quia praecipuō semper flagrābat amōre
Petrī¹, quī summe praeclārus apostolus exstat,
Ipsīus Rōmae dēcrēvit līmina sāncta
Quaerere², vōta precēsque Deō persolvere³ cūrāns.
Atque citus properāns, assūmptā coniuge⁴ sēcum
Et nātīs, urbem pervēnerat ad Ticinēnsem,
In quā nātālis Dominī fēstum celebrāvit.
Hīc igitur statū prīmae cum fine decādis
Annōrum Carolī, postquam rēx cooperat esse
Francōrum sōlus, prīnum fīnīre libellum,
Viribus⁵ ut parvīs requiēs sōlātia praestet.

¹*Then because he always burned with special love for Peter, the famous apostle who was most prominent. The spelling of exstat is extat in the critical edition.*

²*The critical text spells this querere. However, querere is the singular imperative of querī (to complain or grumble) which fits neither grammatically nor contextually. Therefore I have corrected it to quaerere.*

³*Taking care to perform vows and prayers to God.*

⁴*Coniuge* has a consonantal *i* and its syllables are long-short-short.

⁵*So that rest might lend solace to my little strength.*

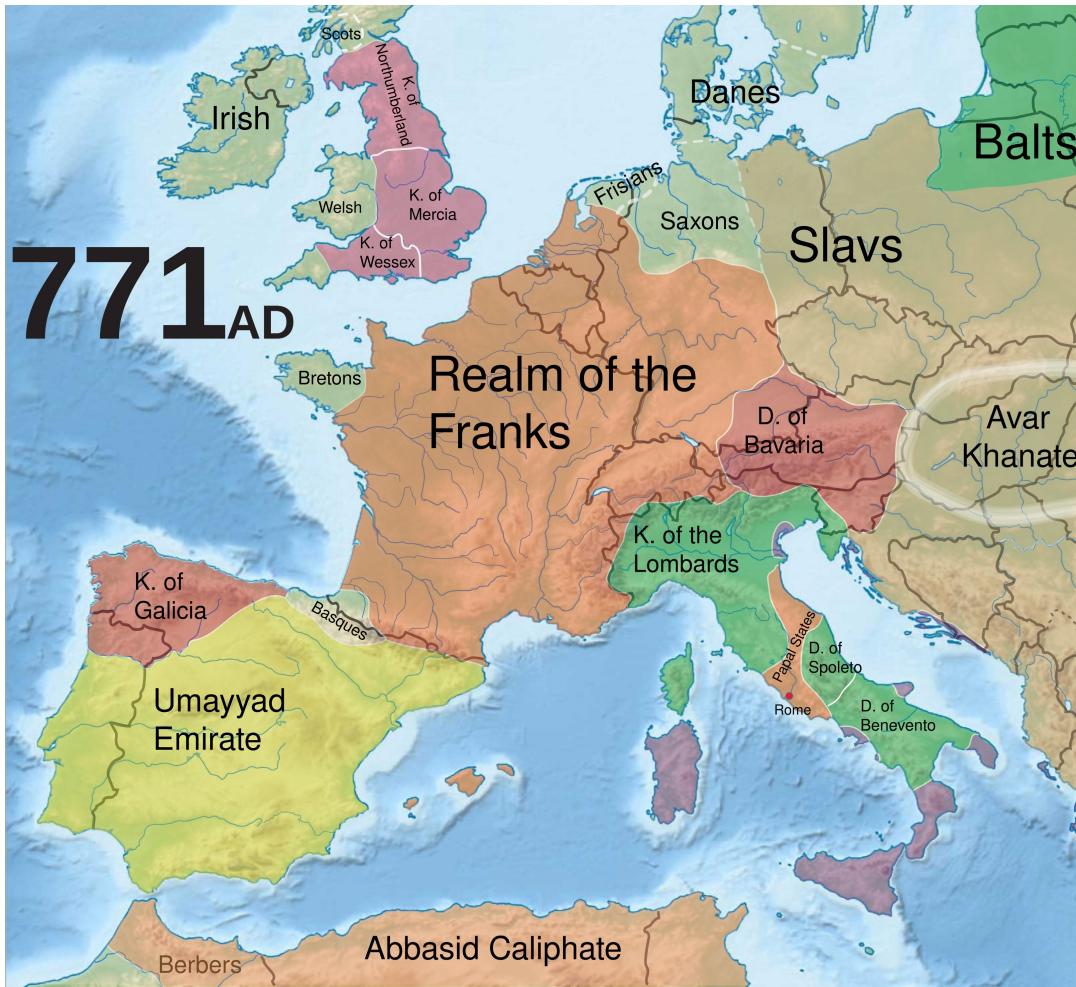
ad: to, towards, at, according to
 amōre: with love; singular masculine ablative from amor, amōris
 annōrum: of years; plural masculine genitive from annus, anni
 apostolus: apostle; singular masculine nominative from
 apostolus, apostoli
 assūptā: having been taken up; singular feminine ablative
 perfect passive participle from sūmō, sūmēre, sūmpsī,
 sūmptus
 atque: and
 Caroli: Charlemagne, AD 748-814, King of the Franks and
 Emperor of the Western Roman Empire, member of the
 Carolingian Dynasty (genitive case)
 celebrāvit: he celebrated; 3rd person singular perfect active
 from celebrō, celebrāre, celebrāvi, celebrātus
 citus: swift; singular masculine nominative from citus -a -um
 cooperat: he had started; 3rd person singular pluperfect active
 from coepio, coopere, coepi, coepitus
 coniuge: spouse; singular common ablative from conjunx,
 conjugis
 cum: with
 cūrāns: taking care; singular nominative present participle from
 cūrō, cūrāre, cūrāvī, cūrātus
 decādis: of the decade; singular feminine genitive from decas,
 dēcādis
 dēcrēvit: he decided; 3rd person singular perfect active from
 dēcernō, dēcernere, dēcrēvi, dēcrētus
 deō: to God; singular masculine dative from Deus, Dei
 Domini: of the lord; singular masculine genitive from dominus,
 domini
 esse: to be
 et: and
 exstat: he stands out, exists; 3rd person singular present active
 from extō, extāre, -,-
 fēstum: festival; singular neuter accusative from fēstus, fēsta,
 fēstum
 fine: boundary, end, limit; singular common ablative from finis,
 finis
 finīre: to finish; present active infinitive from finiō, finīre, finīvī,
 finitus
 flagrābat: he was burning; 3rd person singular imperfect active
 from flagrō, flagrāre, flagrāvī, flagrātus
 Francōrum: of the Franks
 hīc: here
 igitur: therefore
 in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
 ipsius: of itself; singular genitive from ipse, ipsa, ipsum
 libellum: little book; singular masculine accusative from libellus,
 libelli
 limina: thresholds, doorsteps, houses; plural neuter accusative
 from līmen, līminis
 nātālis: birthday; singular common nominative from natalis,
 natalis, natale
 nātīs: children; plural ablative perfect participle from nāscor,
 nāscī, nātus sum
 parvis: small; plural feminine dative from parvus, parva -um,
 minor -or -us, minimus -a -um
 persolvēre: to pay, perform; present active infinitive from
 persolvō, persolvēre, persolvī, persolūtus
 pērvēnerat: he had arrived; 3rd person singular pluperfect
 active from pēveniō, pēvenire, pēvēnī, pēventus
 Petri: Peter; singular masculine genitive from Petrus, Petri
 postquam: since, since then, after
 praecipūō: particular, special; singular masculine ablative from
 praecipiūs, praecipua, praecipūum
 praeclārus: very famous, remarkable; singular masculine
 nominative from pēoclārus, pēclāra, pēclārum
 praestet: it might lend; 3rd person singular subjunctive present
 precēs: prayers; plural feminine accusative from prex, precis
 primāe: first; singular feminine genitive from primus, primā,
 primūm
 prīmūm: first; singular neuter nominative from prīmus, prīma,
 prīmūm
 properāns: hurrying; singular nominative present participle
 from properō, properāre, properāvī, properātus
 quā: in which; singular female ablative of qui
 quaerere: to seek
 quī: who; plural masculine nominative of quis
 quia: because
 requiēs: rest, repose; singular feminine nominative from
 requiēs, requiētis
 rēx: king; singular masculine nominative from rēx, rēgis
 Rōmae: of Rome; singular feminine genitive from Rōma, Rōmae
 sāncta: holy, saint
 sēcum: with himself
 semper: always
 sōlatia: comfort, relief, solace; plural neuter accusative from
 solatiū, solatiī
 sōlus: alone; singular masculine nominative from sōlus, sōla,
 sōlum (gen -ius)

statuī: I decided; 1st person singular perfect from statuō,
 statuere, statuī, statutus
 summe: exceedingly; adverb from summus, summa, sumnum
 Ticinēsem: Ticino, one of the cantons (regions) of Switzerland
 tum: then
 urbē: city; singular feminine accusative from urbs, urbis
 ut: so that
 vīribus: strength; plural feminine dative from vīs, vīs
 vōta: vows; plural neuter accusative from vōtum, vōtī

Bibliography

Jaffé, Philipp, ed. *Bibliothēca rērum Germanicarāum*. Tomus quārtus, *Monumenta Carolina*. Berlin: Weidmann, 1867. <https://archive.org/details/monumentacaroli00unkngoog>

Maps



This map is a modified version of Europe in 771 CE via Wikimedia Commons (CC BY-SA 4.0). https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:771_CE,_Europe.svg

Maps on the following page were generated with the help of OpenStreetMap data for river outlines: therefore some map data © OpenStreetMap contributors, licensed under ODbL. <https://www.openstreetmap.org/copyright>

Overview map of key cities with modern-day boundaries in gray.

